Peace Corps
Basic Spoken Nepali Course
This book is written with the needs of Peace Corps volunteers of Nepal in mind but is equally useful for any foreigners who want to learn Nepali. The material presented here is based on spoken Nepali. Effort has been made to make the material both linguistically and culturally authentic as far as possible. However, the regional variances (Nepali spoken in Eastern vs. Western parts of Nepal) in spoken Nepali as well as in grammar have caused some difficulty in such an effort. In such cases, we have chosen the ones, which, in our experience and knowledge, have appeared to be most common. The differences between the native Nepali speakers (Brahmins, Kshatrys, etc.) and those who speak it as a second language (Gurungs, Newars, Magars, Rais etc.) cause another set of problems. The Nepali spoken by the first group may be considered as correct but the latter represents the majority of the speakers in the country. The material in this book will reflect the influence of this majority group. So while we accept that some of the grammatical patterns used here are not correct in the purest sense, we can claim that this is the way the majority of people do actually speak and consequently most important for the foreigners to learn.

The book contains forty lessons. Each lesson is supplemented by grammar notes and explanations of the usage of different language items that may cause confusion for the learners. Each lesson also includes a list of new words with its English equivalents and conjugation of verbs whenever necessary. The first fifteen lessons are written in Roman Script. The English translation of the new structures are also included along side the Romanized Nepali. This is done with those language learners in mind who may try to learn the language on their own. These people will find the introduction to the Nepali sounds and pronunciation practice chart in the beginning of the book.

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
and an extensive vocabulary list arranged under different topical headings at the end very useful in their attempt at self learning.

Our years of experience in language teaching and our long association with Peace Corps Nepal as Trainers and Language Specialists have culminated in the production of this book. We have received very valuable comments and criticisms from our fellow trainers and colleagues at different times. More valuable have been the suggestions received from the trainees and volunteers who, as learners using this material, have had better insight into the effectiveness of it. We have attempted to incorporate all these ideas in designing the basic format of the book and choosing the contents as far as possible. Hence we would like to express our appreciation to all of them. Our special thanks also go to Miss Jane Abbot, Peace Corps Volunteer teacher of Tribhuvan University, for going through the grammar notes and providing us with helpful suggestions. We are also grateful to Mr. Krishna Lall Bhai Pradhan whose work in this field has aided our present effort considerably.

—the Authors

Preface to this Edition

The present edition contains a number of corrections and additions. An entire new section has been added on Reading and Writing. This was done with a view to meeting the needs of those who wish to learn how to read and write. Also added are (i) some Nepali idioms (ii) adverbial expressions, and (iii) common Nepali proverbs which we hope the learners will find useful.

Every effort has been made to eliminate the typographical errors which appeared in the second edition.

We have received valuable suggestions from many learners who have used this book. We would like to express our grateful thanks to all of them.

Tika B. Karki
Chij K. Shrestha
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson</th>
<th>Focus – Topical/Grammatical</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>An Introduction to the Nepali Sound System</td>
<td>(i)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pronunciation Practice</td>
<td>(xi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>ho, chha – Verb ‘To be’ ‘...eko – Past Tense; ‘...nos.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>–polite command forms.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Continuation of Lesson One</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Continuation of Lesson One &amp; Two</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>‘...ne’ – Present tense</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kahāā jaane ? where are you going ?</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>–Is itavailable? Shopping.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Shopping continued.</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>‘...dai. form – present continuous (I am going).</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Simple Present (I go; He writes). Habitual present</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(I sleep at ten.) Time of the day.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Simple past (I went; you slept)</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Feelings (I felt tired; He felt thirsty)</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Review and past Tense of verb ‘to be (I was; you were);</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>days of the week.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Parts of body; Present Tense of verb ‘to be’ (I am, you are)</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Talking about family members &amp; review</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Likes and dislikes (I like Pokhara; I dont’ like raksi)</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>Possession (I have; He has etc.)</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>More adjectives and post positions (from, to, until etc.)</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>‘ko laagi. – for ... (purpose) A pen is to write with.</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>Directions (Ilam is in the east)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
17. Use of 'le. as an agent.

ma haatle Khaanchhu – I eat with my hand.

20. Bargaining; ‘to be’ verb in Past reinforced.

Comparisons (Ram is taller than shyam)

22. ‘... era. ‘...cpachhi. & ‘...i, ma ghara gacra sutchhu (I'll

sleep after going home)

23. Present perfect Tense – (I have gone there)

24. ‘...daa kheri, – while, when.

amerikaa baaTa aaandaakheri mailë reDiyo Kinë (I

bought a radio while coming from America).

25. Impersonal verbs (dekhincha – is seen; suninchha – is

heard)

26. Past habitual (ma raksi khaanthe – I used to drink)

27. ‘...bhandaa pahile. – before...ing (Where were you before

coming to Nepal?)

28. Past perfect (I had gone; you had written a letter)

29. Past Progressive (I was going: you were writing)

30. All forms of present and Past progressive.

31. Conditional clause ‘bhane. – if

If I have headache, I take aspirins.

32. jahile pani – any time : jataapani – anywhere

33. eko hunaale – Because clause.

phursad nabhaekole ma aaina – I didn’t come because

I didn’t have free time.

34. Relative clause.

The school where he teaches is in a village near Pokhara.

35. Though, even if clause.

Even though my watch is old, it keeps good time.

36. Passives.

Nepal is spoken in all government offices.
37. Reported speech.
   Ram said he was not feeling well today.

38. na aunjel, bittikai
   I went to school right after eating.

39. rahechha.
   I found Pokhara very beautiful.

40. Conditional clause. eko bhae.
   I would have gone to Pokhara if you had not come.

41. Some Nepali Idioms 

42. Adverbial Expressions

43. Common Nepali Proverbs

44. Glossary (Words used in this book)

45. Weight, Measurement etc.

46. Particles

47. Numerals

49. Ordinal Numbers

50. General Vocabulary

51. Conjugation Tables

52. Reading and Writing Section.

53. References
AN INTRODUCTION TO THE NEPALI SOUND SYSTEM

The Nepali alphabet is arranged in the following order. To use a Nepali-English Dictionary, this order must be memorized. The Roman letters used in this book are given with their equivalents in DEVNAGARI SCRIPT.

VOWELS

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccccccc}
\text{भ बा ड ई उ ऊ ए ऐ ओ थो शो}
\text{a aa i i u u c ai o au}
\end{array}
\]

CONSONANTS

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccc}
\text{क ख ग घ ङ क्क छ ज झ ञ}
\text{k kh g gh ng}
\text{च छ ज झ ञ}
\text{ch chh j jh n}
\text{ट ठ ड ढ ण}
\text{t Th D Dh n}
\text{त थ द ध न}
\text{t th d dh n}
\text{प फ ब भ म}
\text{p ph b bh m}
\text{पय र ल व श}
\text{y r l w sh}
\text{ष स ह क थ}
\text{sh s h ksh tra}
\text{श}
\text{gyn}
\end{array}
\]

NOTE

1) The vowels i and u have two forms in written Nepali-short form : (ि ़) and long form : (ी ़). However, since no distinction is made in spoken Nepali, they will be treated as the same in this book.

( i )
2) There are three different “s” sounds in written Nepali. Again, in common spoken Nepali, they are all pronounced as ‘ś’.

3) All Nepali vowel sounds have nasalized forms.

**A brief guide to the production of the Nepali Sounds.**

**VOWEL—**

1. अ (a)– It is a short, mid-central vowel similar to the first vowel in the English word ‘about’. In its articulation, the opening between the jaws is narrow and the lips are rounded.

   अब (aba) — now दस (das) — ten
   अस (asal) — good उठ (uTha) — stand up!

2. ए (aa) – It is a long, low, unsounded vowel similar to the ‘a’ sound in the English word “father”. In its articulation, the middle of the tongue is slightly raised, the opening between the jaws is medium to wide, and the lips are not rounded.

   एमा (aamaa) — mother न एउ (na aau) — don’t come!
   एगो (aago) — fire जरा (jaraa) — root

3. ई (i) — is a short, high front, unrounded vowel, close but not similar to the English vowel (i) in ‘fit’. In order to produce this vowel, the tip of the tongue should be raised toward the hard palate.

   ईनार (inaar) — well गीत (git) — song
   ईन्द्र (indra) — the god of rain भन (pani) — also

4. ई (i)— long but produced the same way (i) is. (Although no distinction is made in spoken Nepali, those letters may have a different meaning when written differently).

   ईस्वर (iswar) — God दिदी (didi) — elder sister
   पानी (paani) — water बहिनी (bahini) — younger sister
(i) Long — in contrast of short  ḍ (i)

तीर (tir) — arrow  तिर (tira) — towards

5. उ (u) — is a short, high back, rounded vowel, very close to the vowel in the English word ‘put’.

उठ (uTha) — stand up!
बाऊन्न (baaunna) — fifty-two
झाउ (jaau) — go!

6. ऊ (u) — is long but produced the same as (u) is.

ऊन (un) — wool
टुलो (Thulo) — big
फुल (phul) — flower

7. ए (e) — is long, high-mid, front, unrounded vowel and the tongue is slightly raised in its articulation.

एक (ek) — one  खाएकोछु (khaaeho chhu) —
गए (gae) — they went.  जानुकोछु (jaanuko chhu) —
I have eaten.

8. ए (ai) — is a low-mid, front, unrounded diphthong sound which is a combination of (a) and (i). The first sound is shorter than the other.

ऐना (aina) — looking glass  बाजी (bajai) — grandmother
सबै (sabai) — all  मकाई (makai) — corn
आजी (aajai) — to-day (emphatic) एउन (aiThan) — nightmare

9. ओ (o) — is long, high-mid, back rounded vowel.

ओत (ot) — shelter
फोहोर (phohor) — dirty
बाठो (baaTo) — road

10. आ (au) — is a long, low-mid, back and rounded diphthong sound—a combination of ऑ and उ.

(iii)
CONSONANTS

Nepali has thirty three consonant sounds twenty-five of which are divided into five broad categories according to the place in the mouth in which they are articulated.

1. Velar consonants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ख</th>
<th>ग</th>
<th>घ</th>
<th>ङ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kh</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>gh</td>
<td>ng</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Palatal consonants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ज</th>
<th>झ</th>
<th>ञ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ja</td>
<td>jha</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Retroflex consonants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ढ</th>
<th>ण</th>
<th>त</th>
<th>थ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>Th</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Dh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Dental Consonants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>त</th>
<th>थ</th>
<th>द</th>
<th>ध</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>th</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>dh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Bi-labial consonants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>फ</th>
<th>ब</th>
<th>भ</th>
<th>म</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>ph</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>bh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Velar Consonant – sounds which are articulated at the soft part of the palate (velum) located above the root of the tongue, are called velar sounds. In the articulation of these sounds the back of the tongue touches the soft palate and there is a complete closure of the air passage.

1.1 क (k) – is an unvoiced, non-aspirate consonant. It’s close equivalent sound in English is ‘k’ as in ‘kite’.

कलम (kalam) — pen  नकल (nahkal) — copy
छाक (chaak) — food for one meal.

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
1.2 ख (kh) – is the aspirated form of ‘k’; While pronouncing ‘ख’, a strong release of breath is noticed.

खानु (khaanu) – to eat
लेख (lehh) – article
पर्खानु (parkhanu) – to wait

1.3 ग (g) – a voiced counterpart of क (k)

गन (gana) – count
काग (kaag) – crow
पागल (paagal) – insane

1.4 घ (gh) – is a voiced counterpart of ‘घ’ and the aspirated form of ‘ग’.

घर (ghar) – house
उघारनु (ughaarnu) – to open
बाघ (baagh) – tiger

1.5 ङ (ng) – is voiced and nasal. It usually occurs in the middle and final positions only. It is similar to the “ng” sound in the English words ‘finger’, ‘song’ except that the ‘g’ part is not pronounced.

नाङ (nang) – finger or toe nail
राङ (rang) – merriment, color
टाङ (Taango) – a long stick

2. PALATAL CONSONANTS – The roof of the mouth is called the palate. Sounds articulated at the hard palate are called palatal sounds. In the articulation of these sounds, the middle of the tongue touches the palate and the breath passes from both sides of the tongue.
2.1 च (ch) – is an unvoiced and non-aspirated palatal consonant. Its closest English equivalent (but not exactly the same) is the ‘ch’ sound in ‘church’.

चार – (chaar) – four बचन – bachan – word
चम्चा – (chamchhaa) – spoon

2.2 छ (chh) – is a voiceless aspirated counterpart of (ch). It has no equivalent in English.

छ – (chha) – six काँच्छी – (kaanchhi) – youngest sister, daughter माछा – (maachhaa) – fish

2.3 झ (j) – It is a voiced, unaspirated palatal sound.

झरा – (jaraa) – root ज्ञान – (aajja) – to-day भजन – (bhajan) – hymn, song of worship

2.4 झ (jh) – is an aspirated counterpart of (j).

झूठो – (jhuTho) – lie बुझनु – (bujhnu) – to understand साजहा – (saajhaa) – partnership

2.5 न (n) – is a nasalized palatal sound. It is so rarely used that it need not be committed to memory.

3. Retroflex consonants – sounds produced with the tip of the tongue arching backward in the oral cavity so as to come in contact with the highest part of the roof, are called Retroflex sounds.

3.1 त (T) – is an unvoiced, non-aspirate retroflex consonant.
3.2 omore (Th) – is an unvoiced aspirate retroflex sound.

3.3 son (D) – is voiced, non-aspirate retroflex consonant.

3.4 son (Dh) – is voiced, aspirate retroflex consonant.

3.5 son (n) – It is so rarely used that it need not be committed to memory.

4. Dental Consonants – Sounds which are articulated at either the upper or lower teeth are called Dentals. In pronouncing the dental sounds in Nepali the tip of the tongue touches the root of the upper teeth and when the tongue is removed from the root of the teeth, the air suddenly escapes through the mouth.

4.1 son (t) – is an unvoiced, non-aspirate dental consonant.

4.2 son (th) – is an unvoiced, aspirate dental consonant.
4.3 ɗ (d) – is a voiced, non-aspirate dental consonant.

**daam** (daam) – price  
**bibaad** (bibaad) – arguement

**badaam** (badaam) – peanut.

4.4 ḍ (dh) – is a voiced, aspirate dental consonant.

**dharma** (dharma) – religion  
**aadhaa** (aadhaa) – half

**raajdhaar** (raajdhaar) – capital

4.5 n (n) – is a nasal dental consonant.

**naam** (naam) – name  
**inaar** (inaar) – well.

**paani** (paani) – water

5. Bi-labial consonants – In the articulation of these sounds, the air passage is completely blocked by closing the lips and then they are opened so that the air suddenly escapes from the mouth.

5.1 p (p) – is unvoiced, non-aspirate bilabial consonant sound.

**paani** (paani) – water  
**taap** (taap) – heat.

5.2 ph (ph) – is unvoiced, aspirate bilabial consonant sound.

**phohor** (phohor) – dirty  
**phalphul** (phalphul) – fruits

**jawaaph** (jawaaph) – answer

5.3 b (b) – is voiced, non-aspirate, bilabial consonant sound.

**baaTo** (baaTo) – way  
**baraabar** (baraabar) – equal

**baa** (baa) – father

(viii)
5.4 भ (bh) – is voiced, aspirate bilabial consonant sound.

भित्र (bhitra) – inside बहागी (abhaagi) – unlucky

5.5 म (m) – is a bilabial nasal sound.

मलाई (malaai) – me कमला (kamala) – Kamala 
अभागी (aamaa) – mother

6. The remaining consonant sounds–

6.1 य (y) – is unrounded, palatal semi-vowel sound.

यता (yataa) – hither बयासी (bayaasi) – eighty two 
समय (samaya) – time.

6.2 र (r) – is a voiced, non-aspirate, rolled, alveolar consonant sound. 
In its articulation, the tip of the tongue makes a rapid succession of taps against the teeth-ridge, producing a rolling sound.

राम्रो (raamro) – good, pretty कराउ (karaau) – shout ! 
सारी (saari) – saari

6.3 ल (l) – is a voiced, non-aspirate lateral sound. To produce this sound the blade of tongue should touch the teeth-ridge, and the air passage should be blocked in the middle so that air passes between the edges of the tongue, and the back of the teeth.

लामो (laamo) – long कलम – (kalam) – pen 
दाल (daal) – lentil soup

6.4 व (w) – is a bilabial semi-vowel. In its articulation the two lips touch one another at the two ends, leaving in the middle a free passage for the outgoing breath to escape.

(ix)
There is a common tendency to pronounce it as b ब

वारी (waari) – this side of a river or a street.
वरिपरि (waripari) – around

6.5 श (s) – is an unvoiced dental sibilant sound. In its articulation, the blade of the tongue touches the teeth-ridge, the front of the tongue being at the same time somewhat raised in the direction of the hard palate.

सारी (saari) – saari कसरी – (kasari) – how
पचास (pachaas) – fifty

6.6 शरष – In Nepali words, these ‘s’ sounds are pronounced as श (s).

6.7 ह (h) – is a glottal fricative.

हामी (haami) – we मह (maha) – honey
शहर (shahar) – city पहर (phor) – last year

7. Besides these above thirty three consonant sounds, there are three compound consonant sounds which are represented by three single alphabets in written Nepali.

7.1 अङ – is a combination of k and sh
अङ (ahshar) – alphabet

6.2 ठ्ठ – is a combination of t and r.
भिठ (bhitra) – inside

7.3 जन – is a combination of gy+n
ज्ञान (gyaan) – knowledge.
Pronunciation Practice

1. Practice the following sounds:

   Non-aspirate vs Aspirate

   **A.** क (k)  
   काम (kaam) - work  
   कर (kar) - tax  
   कुन (kun) - which  
   नो (khun) - blood

   खाम (khaam) - envelope  
   क्हार (khar) - thatch  
   क्हुन (khun) - blood

   **B.** घ (gh)  
   गर (gar) - Do!  
   गाउ (gaaau) - Sing!  
   गोदा (goDaa) - foot

   घर (ghar) - home  
   गाउ (ghaau) - wound  
   घोदा (ghoDaa) - horse

   An Aspirated sound is one accompanied by a strong puff of air. Unaspirated sounds are not released with a puff of air.

   Don’t hesitate to exaggerate the aspiration of a sound in the beginning.

2. Practice the following sounds in contrast:

   **A.** Short Vowel vs Long vowel

   अ (a) as in ‘about’  
   अरू (aru) - other, more  
   काम (kam) - less  
   पनि (pani) - also  
   बजे (baje) - o’clock

   आ (aa) - as in ‘father’  
   आरू (aaru) - peach  
   काम (kaam) - work  
   पानी (pani) - water  
   बाजे (baaje) - grand father

   **B.** Voiced non-aspirate vs Voiced aspirate

   भ (b)  
   बन्नु (bannu) - be made

   भ (bh)  
   भण्णु (bhannu) - tell

(xi)
वारी (baari) – dry field  
बोली (boli) – speech

SOUNDS IN THE PRODUCTION OF WHICH VOCAL CHORDS VIBRATE ARE CALLED VOICED SOUNDS. THE VOCAL CHORDS DON’T VIBRATE IN THE PRODUCTION OF VOICELESS SOUNDS.

3. Practice the following sounds:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Non-aspirate vs Aspirate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Voiceless</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>च (ch)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>चीन (chin) – China</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>बिब्बु (chinnu) – recognize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>छ (chh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>छीन (chhin) – moment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>भिब्बु (chhinnu) – cut through</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Voiced**               |
| ज (j)                    |
| जानु (jaannu) – know     |
| जन (jan) – people       |
| झ (jh)                  |
| झानु (jhaannu) – put butter and fried spices into the daal. |
| जन (jhan) – more        |

| **Voiceless**            |
| प (pa)                   |
| पाली (parsi) – day after tomorrow |
| पोलो (pohor) – last year |
| पाल्नु (paalnu) – tame    |
| फ (ph)                  |
| फाली (pharsi) – pumpkin |
| फोलो (phohor) – dirty  |
| फाल्नु (phaalnu) – throw away |

(xii)
4. Practice the following sounds:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Voiceless</th>
<th>vs</th>
<th>Voiced</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>कति</td>
<td>(kati) – how much</td>
<td>गति</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>नाम</td>
<td>(kaam) – work</td>
<td>गाम</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>सर</td>
<td>(khar) – thatch</td>
<td>घर</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>बाम</td>
<td>(khaam) – envelope</td>
<td>घाम</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>चरा</td>
<td>(charaa) – bird</td>
<td>जरा</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>चोनुं</td>
<td>(chornu) – steal</td>
<td>जोनु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>छनुं</td>
<td>(chharnu) – sow</td>
<td>झनु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पटी</td>
<td>(chhuT) – rebate</td>
<td>झूट</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पानी</td>
<td>(paani) – water</td>
<td>बानी</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पोका</td>
<td>(pokaa) – bundle, packet</td>
<td>बोका</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>फरिया</td>
<td>(phariyaa) – sari</td>
<td>भरिया</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>फुटनु</td>
<td>(phuTnu) – break</td>
<td>भुटनु</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can feel the vibration of your vocal chords while producing the voiced consonants. Note the difference in the meaning when sound is voiced and not voiced.

5. The [T] and [D] sounds of Nepali are usually difficult for native English speakers. Listen and practice the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Non-aspirated retroflex</th>
<th>Aspirated retroflex</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ट</td>
<td>(T)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>टोक्</td>
<td>(Tok) – Bite!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>काट्</td>
<td>(kaaT) – Cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>बाटो</td>
<td>(baaTo) – road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ढ</td>
<td>(D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ढोका</td>
<td>(Dokaa) – basket</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(xiii)

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
Sounds produced with the apex of the tongue arching backward in the oral cavity are called RETROFLEX sounds.

6. Listen and practice the following dental sounds:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Non-aspirated</th>
<th>Aspirated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Voiceless</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>त</td>
<td>त</td>
<td>थ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ताल</td>
<td>(taal) – lake</td>
<td>थाल (thaal) – tray, a big plate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ताप</td>
<td>(taap) – heat</td>
<td>थाप (thaap) – hold out!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>साल</td>
<td>(saat) – seven</td>
<td>साथ (saath) – with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voiced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>द</td>
<td>द</td>
<td>ध</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>दाइ</td>
<td>(daai) – elder brother</td>
<td>धाइ (dhaai) – nurse, midwife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>दान</td>
<td>(daan) – gift</td>
<td>धान (dhaan) – paddy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>दाम</td>
<td>(daam) – price</td>
<td>धाम (dhaam) – religious place</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sounds which are articulated at either the upper or the lower teeth are called DENTAL sounds. The English dentals (like in “think”) and Nepali dentals are pronounced with a slight difference. Listening carefully is the only way to discern this difference.

7. Practice the following sounds in contrast:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Voiceless Retroflex</th>
<th>Voiceless Dental</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>त</td>
<td>त (T)</td>
<td>त (t)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>टीन</td>
<td>(Tin) – tin</td>
<td>टीन (tin) – three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>टार्नु</td>
<td>(Taarnu) – put off</td>
<td>टार्नु (Taarnu) – fry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पाट</td>
<td>(paaT) – jute</td>
<td>पाट (paat) – leaf</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(xiv)
b) Voiced Retroflex

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ड</th>
<th>(D)</th>
<th>non-aspirated</th>
<th>ड</th>
<th>(d)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>डर</td>
<td>(Dar)</td>
<td>fear</td>
<td>डर</td>
<td>(dar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>डाम</td>
<td>(Daam)</td>
<td>mark</td>
<td>डाम</td>
<td>(daam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>डिल</td>
<td>(Dil)</td>
<td>ridge, edge</td>
<td>डिल</td>
<td>(dil)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c) Voiceless Retroflex

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ठ</th>
<th>(T)</th>
<th>aspirated</th>
<th>ठ</th>
<th>(th)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ठिठी</td>
<td>(Thiti)</td>
<td>young girl</td>
<td>ठिठी</td>
<td>(thiti)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ठाम</td>
<td>(Thaam)</td>
<td>place</td>
<td>ठाम</td>
<td>(thaam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>साठी</td>
<td>(saaThi)</td>
<td>sixty</td>
<td>साठी</td>
<td>(saathi)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d) Voiced Retroflex

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ढ</th>
<th>(Dh)</th>
<th>aspirated</th>
<th>ढ</th>
<th>(dh)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ढाप</td>
<td>(Dhaap)</td>
<td>pat on back</td>
<td>ढाप</td>
<td>(dhaap)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ढोका</td>
<td>(Dhokaa)</td>
<td>door</td>
<td>ढोका</td>
<td>(dhokaa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ढाक</td>
<td>(Dhaak)</td>
<td>cover</td>
<td>ढाक</td>
<td>(dhaak)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(xv)
LESSON 1

VOCABULARY

chha is kholnu to open

dinu to give kitaab book

garnu to do mero my, mine

ghar home, house naam name

hajur yes (polite) namaste hello, good-

ho is (definitive) bye, greetings

hoina is not (definitive) ni and how about

jholaa shoulder bag paDhnu to read

kaalo black seto white

kaapi note book ta then

kahāā where tapaalko your, yours

kalam pen tya that

kamij shirt wahāāko his, her, hers

kasko whose yo this

kasto what color, how (Qualitative)

ke what

Part I


2. tapaalko naam ke ho ? mero naam raam ho. What is your name ? My name is Ram.

3. wahāāko naam ke ho ? wahāāko naam krishna ho. What is his name ? His name is Krishna.

4. tapaalko ghar kahāā ho ? mero ghar amerikaa ho. Where do you come from ? (lit. Where is your house ?) I am from the States. (lit. My home is America)

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
5. wahaako ghar kahāa ho? wahaako ghar nepaal ho.
   Where does he come from? He is from Nepal.

PART II

(a)

1. yo ke ho? yo kalam ho.
   What is this? This is a pen.

2. yo kasko kalam ho? yo mero kalam ho.
   Whose pen is this? This is my pen.

   What is that? That is a book.

   Whose book is that? That is his book.

5. tyo ni? tyo tapaalko kitaab ho.
   And this? That is your book.

(b)

   What is that? This is a book.

2. tyo kasko kitaab ho? tyo mero kitaab ho.
   Whose book is that? This is my book.

3. kitaab kholnus. tapaale ke gareko? maile kitaab kholeko.

4. wahaale ke gareko? wahaale kitaab kholeko.
   What did he do? He opened the book.

2
1. Jim!
   Hajur.
2. Tyo kalam ho?
   Hoina.
3. Tyo ke ho ta?
   Yo kaapi ho.
4. Tyo kasko kaapi ho?
   Yo mero kaapi ho.

Jim!
Yes.
Is that a pen?
No, it isn’t.
What is it then?
It’s a note-book.
Whose note-book is that?
It’s my note-book.

1. Tyo ke ho?
   Yo kalam ho.
2. Tyo kasko kalam ho?
   Yo mero kalam ho.
3. Tapaalko kalam kasto chha?
   Mero kalam kaalo chha.
4. Kalam dinos.
   Tapaalle ke gareko?
   Maile kalam dieko.

What is that?
It’s a pen.
Whose pen is that?
It’s my pen.
What color is your pen?
My pen is black.
Please give (me) the pen.
What did you do?
I gave (you) the pen.

1. Tyo ke ho?
   Yo jholaa ho.
2. Tyo kasko jholaa ho?
   Yo wahāāko jholaa ho.
3. Tyo jholaa kasto chha?
   Yo jholaa seto chha.

What is that?
It’s a shoulder bag.
Whose bag is that?
It’s his bag.
What color is that bag?
This bag is white.
4. tyo jholaa dinos. tapaalle ke gareko ? maile jholaa dieko. Please give (me) that bag. What did you do ? I gave (you) the bag.

(f)

1. maaik ji ! hajur. Mike !
2. tyo kasko kitaab ho ? yo mero kitaab ho. Whose book is that ? This is my book.

Grammar Notes

1. The suffix ‘ko’ is attached to the end of nouns and some pronouns to denote possession.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Pronoun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>maaik</td>
<td>Mike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaai</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wahaa</td>
<td>he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maaikko</td>
<td>Mike’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaakk</td>
<td>yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wahaaak</td>
<td>his, her, her</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

But Note

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronoun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mero</td>
<td>mine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usko</td>
<td>his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haamro</td>
<td>our, ours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. The word ‘namaste’ is used both when people meet and part, taking the place of ‘good morning’, ‘good night’, ‘good bye’, etc. ‘namaskar’ is another form of greeting (less common than ‘namaste) used when more respect or courtesy is appropria.
3. **Word order** One important difference between English and Nepali is word order. In Nepali, the verb always comes at the end of the sentence. Note the word order in the following sentence:

mero naam kamalaa ho! tapaalko ghar kaha ho?
My name Kamala is. Your house where is.

4. ‘**Hajur’ ‘Yes’ (polite), is used in response after one is addressed. In also can mean ‘I beg your pardon’ when pronounced with rising intonation.

5. **ji or jyu**, is usually added to the end of people’s names to express respect.

6. ‘hoima’ does not always correspond to ‘no’ in English but instead usually to ‘no, it isn’t.

‘ho’ may be used as a single-word reply in affirmation or to mean ‘Yes, it is’.

7. **Honorific Commands**

   kholnus or kholnos. Please, open it.
   paDhunus or paDhnos. Please, read it.

8. In spoken Nepali the ‘eko’ form is very commonly used in simple past, past perfect and present progressive tenses.

   **Examples.** maaikle ke gareko? What did Mike do?
   maaikle kitaab kholeko. Mike opened the book.
   ke paDheko? What are you reading?
   ke lekheko? What are you writing?

9. ‘ie’ is attached to the subject in the past tense, if the verb is transitive. A transitive verb is one that requires an object.

   **Example.**

   Transitive verb, i.e. those having objects

   khaanu - to eat
   banda garnu - to close
   garnu - to do
Intransitive verb, i.e. those not needing objects.

- sutnu – to sleep
- jaanu – to go

10. ‘mi’ is an interrogative particle which is used at the end of a sentence. It means, … and how about?

11. ‘ta’ is a commonly used particle with no literal meaning. It’s meaning varies. In the following dialogue, it means ‘then’.

- tyo raamko kitaab ho? Is that Ram’s book?
- hoina. No, it isn’t.
- kasko ho ta? Whose is it, then?
- mero ho. It’s mine.

12. The English Verb ‘is’ has three different equivalents in Nepali: ‘ho’ ‘chha’ and ‘hunchha’

(a) ‘ho’ (negative ‘hoina’) is used to define something or somebody. Examples.

- kaaThmaanDu nepaalko Kathmandu is the capital of Nepal.
- raajdhaani ho. This is my house.

(b) ‘chha’ (negative ‘chhaina’) is used to locate things and people.

- kalam Tebulmaa chha. The pen is on the table.
- mero bhaai gharmaa chha. My brother is at home.

‘chha’ is also used to state the quality of something or somebody.

- usko kamij raamro chha. His shirt is nice.
- mero kalam kaalo chha. My pen is black.
(c) Study the following sentences carefully:

mero ghar raato chha. My house is red.
raato ghar mero ho. The red house is mine.

13. Note the different meanings of 'kasto':

suntala kasto chha? How does the orange taste?
tapaalko kamij kasto chha? What is your shirt like?
kasto chha? How is it?
LESSON 2

VOCABULARY.

aamaa  mother  ma  I
amiló  sour  maile  I (in past tense with
baa  father  transitive verb)
banda garnu  to close, to shut  malaai  to me, for me
chhaina  isn’t  paani  water
chiso  cold  pani  also
chiyaa  tea  sanchai  fine, well
Dhokaa  door  suntalaa  orange
khaanu  to eat, to drink  sayau  apple
linu  to take  taato  hot

Part 1

(a)

1. namaste.
   namaste.  Greetings!
2. sanchai ?
   sanchai.  How are you?
   Fine, thanks
3. tapaalko ghar kahaa ho ?
   mero ghar amerikaa ho.  Where are you from?
   I am from the States.
4. tapaalko baako naam ke ho ?
   mero baako naam bil ho.  What’s your father’s name?
   My father’s name is Bill.
5. tapaalko aamaako naam ke ho ?
   mero aamaako naam baarbaraa ho.  What’s your mother’s name?
   My mother’s name is Barbara.
1. tapaalaai kasto chha?
   malaai sanchai chha.
   How are you?
   I'm fine.

2. tapaalaai ni?
   malaai pani sanchai chha.
   And you?
   I'm fine too.

3. tapaalko ghar amerikaa ho?
   ho, mero ghar amerikaa ho.
   Are you from America?
   Yes, I'm from America.

4. amerikaamaa kahaa?
   kyaaliphorniyaamaa.
   Where in America?
   In California.

**PART II**

(a)

1. tyo ke ho?
   tyo Dhokaa ho.
   What's that?
   That's a door.

2. Dhokaa kholnos.
   tapaalle ke gareko?
   maile Dhokaa kholeko.
   Open the door, please.
   What did you do?
   I opened the door.

3. wahāāle ke gareko?
   wahāāle Dhokaa kholeko.
   What did he do?
   He opened the door.

4. Dhokaa banda garnos.
   tapaalle ke gareko?
   maile Dhokaa banda gareko.
   Close the door, please.
   What did you do?
   I closed the door.

5. wahāāle ke gareko?
   wahāāle Dhokaa banda gareko.
   What did he do?
   He closed the door.

(b)

1. tyo ke ho?
   yo suntalaa ho.
   What is that?
   It's an orange.
2. khaanos
tapaalle ke gareko ?
maile suntalaa khaaeko.

3. suntalaa kasto chha ?
suntalaa guliyo chha.

4. malaai pani dinos.
linos.

(c)

1. tyo suntalaa ho ?
hoina.

2. ke ho, ta ?
syaau ho.

3. khaanos.
tapaalle ke gareko ?
maile syaau khaaeko.

4. syaau amilo chha ?
chhaina, guiliyo chha.

(d)

1. chiyaa khaanus.
tapaalle ke gareko ?
maile chiyaa khaaeko.

2. wahaale paani khaaeko ?
hoina, wahaale pani chiyaa khaaeko.

3. chiyaa chiso chha ?
chhaina.

4. kasto chha, ta ?
taato chha.

Have some, please.
What did you do ?
I ate the orange.
How is the orange ?
The orange is sweet.
Give me some, too, please.
Take it, please.

Is than an orange ?
No, it is not.
What is it, then ?
It’s an apple.
Have some, please.
What did you do ?
I ate the apple.
Is the apple sour ?
No, it isn’t. It’s sweet

Have some tea, please.
What did you do ?
I drank some tea.
Did he drink water ?
No, he also drank tea.

Is the tea cold ?
No, it isn’t.
How is it, then ?
It’s hot.

10

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
Grammar Notes.

1. tapaallaai kasto chha? Though not idiomatic, it is quite frequently used by the Nepalese in contact with foreigners (a direct translation ‘How are you?’)

2. sanchai, emphatic form of sancho. lit., well, in good health, it means. How are you?
LESSON 3

VOCABULARY

aaphno own
aaunu to come
baahira outside
bahini sister (younger)
bhaai brother (younger)
bhitra in, inside
chaahl one (specifies)
chaar four
chhan are
daai brother (older)
dui two
ek one
hun are
jaanu to go
jhyaal window
kaslaai whom
kati how much
katiwaTaa how many
khaliti pocket
ko who
kun which
maa at, in, on
nira near
raajya state
raakhnu to put
raato red
shahar town, city
ti those
timi you (Familiar)
tin three
usko his, hers
usle he, she
yi these

PART I

(a)

1. tapaalko naam ke ho ?
   mero naam maaik ho
What’s your name ?
   My name is Mike.

2. wahaako ni ?
   wahaako naam PiTar ho.
And his ?
   His name is Peter.

3. tapaalko ghar kahaa ho ?
   amerikaamaa
Where do you come from ?
   From America.

4. kun raajyamaa ?
   waashingTanmaa.
Which state ?
   In Washington.
5. tapaalko shaharko naam ke ho? What is the name of your city? Seattle.

(b)

1. namaste.
   namaste.

2. u ko ho?
   u mero bhaai ho.

3. usko naam ke ho?
   usko naam raam ho.

4. tapaalko daai hunuhunchha?
   hunuhunna.

5. didi ni?
   didi pani hunuhunna.

6. bahini chha ta?
   chha.

7. tapaalko bahiniko naam ke ho?
   mero bahiniko naam sitaa ho.

   PART II

(a)

1. tyo ke ho?
   yo kitaab ho.

2. tyo kasko kitaab ho?
   yo mero kitaab ho.

3. tyo kitaabko naam ke ho?
   yo kitaabko naam ‘Basic, Course in Spoken Nepali’ ho.

   It’s a book.
   Whose book is that?
   What’s the name of that book?

   My sister’s name is Sita.
4. PaDhnos.
   tapaalle ke gareko ?
   maile kitaab paDheko.

5. wahaāle ke gareko ?
   wahaāle kitaab paDheko.

(b)

1. tyo ke ho ?
   yo kalam ho.

2. tyo kasko kalam ho ?
   yo mero kalam ho.

3. tyo kalam wahaālaai dinos.
   tapaalle kalam kaslaai dieko ?
   maile kalam wahaālaai dieko.

4. tapaalle wahaālaai kasko kalam dieko ?
   maile wahaālaai mero kalam dieko.

(c)

1. jhyaal banda gara.
   timile ke gareko ?
   maile jhyaal banda gareko.

2. jhyaal khola.
   usle ke kholeko ?
   usle jhyaal kholeko.

3. usle Dhokaa kholeko ?
   hoina, usle jhyaal kholeko.

Read it, please.
What did you do ?
I read the book.

What did he do ?
He read the book.

What is that ?
It's a pen.

Whose pen is that ?
It's my pen.

Please give that pen to him.
Whom did you give your pen ?
I gave him the pen.

Whose pen did you give him ?
I gave him my pen.

Shut the window.
What did you do ?
I shut the window.

Open the window.
What did he open ?
He opened the window.

Did he open the door ?
No, he opened the window.
1. Go outside.
   timile kahāā gaeko?
   ma baahira gaeko.
2. Where did you go?
   u baahira gaeko.
3. He went out.
   bhitra aau.
   timile ke gareko?
   ma bhitra aae ko.
4. What did you do?
   usle ke gareko?
   u bhitra aae ko.

Please go to the black-board.
1. tampaalle ke gareko?
   ma blyaakborDnira gaeko.
2. I went to the black-board.
   wahāāle ke gareko?
   wahāā blyaakborDnira gaeko.
3. What did he do?
   blyaakborDmaa tapaalko naam
   lekhnos.
   tampaalle ke gareko?
   maile blyaakborDmaa
   aaphno naam lekheko.

How much is this?
1. One.
   yo kati ho?
   ek.
2. And this
   yo ni?
   dui

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
3. blyaakborDmaa tin lekhnos. Please write the number ‘3’ on the black-board.

tapaalle ke lekheko ? What did you write?
maile tin lekheko. I wrote the number ‘3’.

4. wahāalle chaar lekheko ? Did he write the number ‘4’?
hoina, tin lekheko. No, he wrote ‘3’.

(g)

1. ti ke hun ? What are those?
ti kalam hun. They are pens.

2. tyahāa katiwaTaa kalam chhan? How many pens are there?
tyahāa tinwaTaa kalam chhan. There are three pens.

3. tapaalko kalam kun chaahī ho? Which one is your pen?
mero kalam raato chaahī ho. The red one is my pen.

4. tapaalko kalam khaltimaa raakhnos. Please put your pen in your pocket.
tapaalle ke gareko ? What did you do?
maile kalam mero khaltimaa raakhko. I put my pen in my pocket.

5. tapaalle kasko kalam khaltimaa raakhko? Whose pen did you put in your pocket?
maile mero kalam khaltimaa raakhko. I put my pen in my pocket.

Grammar Notes

1. ‘waTaa’ and ‘janaa’ are classifiers which are used with countable nouns. Countable nouns, as opposed to mass nouns, are those which can be counted. They are used post positionally to the number, but precede the noun in question. As a general rule ‘waTaa’ is used with things, whereas ‘janaa’ is only used with people.

Forms.

   a) cuiTaa, dui waTaa or duiTaa, tia waTaa, chaar waTaa.
   b) ek janna, dui janaa, etc.
2. 'nira'—to near. nera is the variant spelling of nira.

3. 'hun'—is plural of 'ho, while 'hoinam' is the plural negative.

4. 'chhan'—is plural of 'chha' and chhaina is the plural negative.

5. Post-Positions.

Note that in Nepali, English preposition equivalents come after the noun and thus are postpositions. For example:

nepaalmaa
  —in Nepal.

blyaakborDmaa
  —on the black-board.

6. 'aaphno' combines with the possessive pronouns to emphasize possession, i.e. my own, his own, etc, for example—

maile aaphno naam lekheko.
  —I wrote my own name.

sitaale aaphno kitaab paDheko.
  —Sita read her own book.

7. chaahl,—virtually means 'one' in situations asking for an identification. For example—

kun chaahl
  —which one ?

yo chaahl
  —This one.

8. The respect for seniority, rank and caste position in the Nepalese culture accounts for different forms of the infinitive 'to be' or 'huma'. In part I b when inquiring about one's family member, 'hanhunchha' (affirmative) and 'hunhunna' (negative) are used in reference to older brothers and sisters while simply 'chha' is used when referring to younger siblings. This more respectful form is also used when one wishes to be courteous.

9. 'timi' one of the three forms of 'you', is also a result of the above mentioned attitude, i.e. 'timi' denotes second person usages for those younger in age, lower in rank, and for lower in caste position. In addition, the verb ending changes, as in Part II, c. The command form 'garnus' changes to 'gara 1. This form of 'you' is also used in situations of familiarity, i.e. between friends.
# LESSON 4

## VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaja</td>
<td>today</td>
<td>kina</td>
<td>why</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ani</td>
<td>and then</td>
<td>kinnu</td>
<td>to buy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baaTa</td>
<td>from</td>
<td>ki</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>c ass</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bajaar</td>
<td>market</td>
<td>klaas</td>
<td>who (plural)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baje</td>
<td>o’clock (When</td>
<td>koko</td>
<td>to write</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>stating/asking</td>
<td>lekhnu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>time of an event</td>
<td>najaane</td>
<td>will not go</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belukaa</td>
<td>evening</td>
<td>napaDhne</td>
<td>will not read</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bholi</td>
<td>tomorrow</td>
<td>naraakhne</td>
<td>will not put</td>
<td>five</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bholi bihaana</td>
<td>tomorrow morning</td>
<td>pāach</td>
<td>quarter to seven</td>
<td>to return</td>
<td>Foot ball</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bidaa</td>
<td>holiday</td>
<td>paune saat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chaamal</td>
<td>uncooked rice</td>
<td>pharkanu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chini</td>
<td>sugar</td>
<td>phuTbal</td>
<td></td>
<td>raksi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daal-bhaat</td>
<td>lentils &amp; cooked</td>
<td>saaDhe das</td>
<td></td>
<td>saat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rice.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>das</td>
<td>ten</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deraa</td>
<td>apartment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diūso</td>
<td>day time (afternoon)</td>
<td>saathi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dudh</td>
<td>milk</td>
<td>samma</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>holaa</td>
<td>may be, might be</td>
<td>sawaa pāach</td>
<td></td>
<td>quarter past five</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>probably</td>
<td>sinemaa</td>
<td></td>
<td>movie, picture show</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaphi</td>
<td>coffee</td>
<td>tarkaari</td>
<td></td>
<td>vegetables.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khaanaa</td>
<td>food, meal</td>
<td>Tep</td>
<td></td>
<td>tape</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## PART I.

(a)

1. sanchai ?
   sanchai chha, tapaallai ni ?
   How are you ?
   I’m fine, and you ?
2. sanchai chha. tapaâl kahâa jaane? I'm fine. Where are you going?
mero Deraaamaa. To my apartment.

3. tapaâlko Deraa kahâa chha? Where is your apartment?
mero Deraa kamal pokharimaa It's in Kamal Pokhari.
chaa.

4. tapaâlko Deraamaa ko ko chhan? Who else are staying with you?
ma ra mero saathi. Me and a friend of mine.

(b)

1. tapaâl chiya khaane ki kaphi What would you like? Tea or
khaane? I'll have coffee.
ma kaphi khaane.

2. tapaâl ni? And how about you?
ma chiya khaane. I'll have tea.

3. kaphimaa chini raakhne? Should I put sugar in your coffee?
raakhne. Yes, put in some, please.

4. dudh ni? Milk too?
naraakhne. No, thanks. Don't put in any.

P A R T  I I.

(a)

1. chiya khaane? Wold you like to have tea?
khaane. I'll have some.

2. tapaâl ni? And you?
ma pani khaane. I'll drink some, too.

3. chiyaamaa chini raakhne? Do you want sugar in your tea?
raakhne. Sure, put some in, please.

4. dudh ni? Milk too?
naraakhne. Yes, put some milk in, too.
(b)

1. tapaal pāach baje kahāa jaane ma aaphno Deraamaa jaane.
   Where are you going at 5 o’clock? I am going to my place.
2. Deraamaa ke garne?
   daal bhaat khaane.
   What are you going to do there? I’m going to eat rice.
3. ani ke garne?
   nepaali Tep sunne.
   And then what are you going to do? I’ll listen to some Nepali tapes.
4. kati baje sutne?
   das baje sutne.
   What time are you going to go to sleep? I’ll go to bed at ten.

(c)

1. kahāa jaane?
   bajaarmaa jaane.
   Where are you going? I’m going to the bazar.
2. bajaarmaa kina jaane?
   chaamal, daal ra tarkaari kinna.
   Why are you going to the bazar? To buy rice, lentils and vegetables.
3. bajar baaTa kati baje pharkane?
   chaar baje holaa.
   What time are you coming back from the bazar? Probably around four.

(d)

1. bholi bihaana kati baje UThne?
   chha baje uThne.
   What time are you going to get up tomorrow morning? I’m going to get up at 6 o’clock.
2. klaasmaa kati baje jaane?
   klaasmaa saat baje jaane.
   When will you go to class? I’ll go at seven.
3. khaanaa kati baje khaane?
   das baje holaa.
   What time are you going to eat? Probably at ten o’clock.
4. ani ke garne?
   ani kitaab paDhne.
   What will you do then? And then I’ll read a book.

20
1. aaja diūso nepaali paDhne ki na paDhne ?
   na paDhne.
2. ke garne ta ?
   nepali lekhne.
3. kati baje samma nepaali lekhne?
   saawa pāāch baje samma.
4. ani ke garne ?
   ani phuTbal khelne.

  Are you going to study any Nepali this afternoon or not ?
  No, I'm not going to read any.

  What are you going to do, then ?
  I'll write Nepali.

  Up to what time are you going to write Nepali ?
  Until quarter after five.

  What are you going to do, then ?
  Then I'll play foot-ball.

1. aaja belukaa kahaā jaane ?
   sinemaa heraa jaane.
2. tapaaĪ pani jaane ?
   najaane.
3. tapaaĪ kahaā jaane ta ?
   saathiko gharmaa jaane.
4. saathiko gharbāaTa kati baje pharkane ?
   paune saat baje holaa.

  Where are you going later on this evening ?
  I'm going to the movie.

  Are you going, too ?
  No, I'm not going to go.

  Where are you going to go then ?
  I'm going over to my friend's house.

  What time will you come back from your friend's ?
  Probably at quarter to seven.

1. bholi nepaali paDhne ?
   bholi nepali napaDhne.

  Are you going to study Nepali tomorrow ?
  Tomorrow I'm not going to read any Nepali.
2. kina? Why?
   bholi bidaa ho. Tomorrow is a holiday.

3. bidaamaa ke garne?
   shaharmaa jaane ra raksi khaane. I'm going to go to town and drink raksi.

4. tapaaal pani aaune?
   aaune. Sure, I'll come.

5. shaharbaaTa kati baje pharkane? What time are you coming back from town?
   saaDhe das baje pharkane. I'll come back at half past ten.

**Grammar Notes**

1. Such words as 'jaane' 'khaane', 'paDhne' etc which are short verb forms are commonly used in spoken Nepali. The 'ne' ending is indicative of a future event, whereas the 'eko' verb ending refers to a past activity. Study the following examples:

   tapaaal bholi kaaThmaanDu jaane? Are you going to Kathmandu tomorrow?
   timi chiyaa khaane ki kaphi khaane? Would you like tea or coffee?
   usle ke paDheko? What did he read?
   usle nepaali kitaab paDheko. He read a Nepali book.

2. 'na' is used as a prefix to the verb to negate the idea.

   tapaaal bajaar jaane? Are you going to the bazaar?
   najaane. No, I'm not.

3. ko ko (lit. who, who). Most question words in Nepali are often repeated to indicate plurality.

   tapaaal ke ke khaane? What (what different things) do you want to eat?
4. ‘kinna’- (From ‘kinnu’ to buy). This modification of the verb infinitive specifies the purpose of an endeavor.

In this case: ‘for the purpose of buying’

Note that when used in a sentence, the infinitive ending of the verb ‘nu’ changes into ‘na’

hernu — ma sinemaa herna najaane—I’m not going to the movie.
sutnu — ma sutna jaane —I’m going to go to sleep.

5. ‘hola’— It means, ‘probably’, ‘may be’, ‘might be’, ‘possibly’, ‘like’.

23
**LESSON 5**

**VOCABULARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>asanTol</th>
<th>Asan Tole (a street in Kathmandu)</th>
<th>niuroD</th>
<th>New Road (a street in Kathmandu)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>baTTaa</td>
<td>packet (lit. became)</td>
<td>pasal</td>
<td>store, shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhayo</td>
<td>cheese, thing</td>
<td>paainchha</td>
<td>is available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chij</td>
<td>cigarette</td>
<td>paaldaina</td>
<td>is not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>churoT</td>
<td>Yes, ok, sure</td>
<td>phalphul</td>
<td>fruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hunchha</td>
<td>total</td>
<td>phul</td>
<td>egg, flower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jammaa</td>
<td>to take</td>
<td>saahuji</td>
<td>store-keeper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linu</td>
<td>expensive</td>
<td>yahaa</td>
<td>quarter of a rupee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mahango</td>
<td>half a rupee 50 paisa.</td>
<td></td>
<td>here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mohar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PART I**

2. kahāa jaane ? bajaar jaane. Where are you going ? I’m going to the bazar.
3. bajaarmaa kina jaane ? tarkaari kinna jaane. Why are you going to the bazar? I’m going to buy vegetables.
4. ani kahāa jaane ? Deraamaa pharkane. Where are you going then ? I’m going to go back to my place.
5. kati baje pharkane ? pāach baje holaa. What time are you heading back ? Probably, at five O’clock.
PART II

(a)

1. tapaalko pasalmaa churoT chha? Do you have cigarettes in your store?
   chha. kati line? Yes, I have. How many would you like?
2. ek baTTaako kati? How much is a packet?
   ek baTTaako paach mohar. Two and a half rupees.
3. dui baTTa dinos. Give me two packets, please.
   linos. Please, take it.

(b)

1. yahää suntalaa chha? Do you have oranges?
   chha. Yes, I do.
2. ek rupiyaako kati? How many for a rupee?
   dui waTaa. Two.
3. mahango bhayo? They’re expensive?
   tinwaTaa dinos. Please give me three for a rupee.
4. hunchha. kati rupiyaako line? O.K. How many do you want?
   pāach rupiyaako line. I’ll take five rupees worth.
5. la, pandhra waTaa linos. Here, take fifteen of them.

(c)

1. asan Tolmaa phalphul paainchha? Are fruits available in Asan Tole?
   paainchha. Yes, they are.
2. chij ni? How about cheese?
   chij ta paaldaina. No, cheese is not available.
3. chij kahāa paainchha ta ?
niuroDmaa paainchha.

Where is cheese found then ?
It’s found in New road.

4. ek kiloko kati parchha ?
bis rupiyāā parchha.

How much is a kilo ?
It costs 20 rupees.

(d)

1. e saahuji ! phul chha ?
chha. katiwaTaa line ?

Oh shopkeeper! Do you have eggs?
Yes, I do. How many would you
like ?

2. euTaako kati ho ?
tin sukaa.

How much are they a piece ?
Seventy five paisa.

3. chaarwaTaa dinos.
linos.

Give me four, please.
Here, take them, please.

4. jammaa kati bhayo ?
tin rupiyāā.

How much does it come to ?
Three rupees.

Grammar Notes

1. ‘mahango bhayo’ It’s expensive—(lit. It became expensive) is a very commonly used
expression, when bargaining.

2. sukaa — a 25 paisa coin.
mohaar — a 50 pasa coin.

Both of these are commonly used in Kathmandu and in the hills. In the Terai
you will hear people saying ‘chaar aanna’ for sukaa and ‘aoTh aanaa’ for a mohar.

3. ‘paainchha’—This is an example of an impersonal verb. Its form remains the same
irrespective of numbers, persons, and genders. The most common verb form is the
singular third person of any tense. The impersonal verb forms are very common in
Nepali and are often used in places where English prefers to use personal forms.
Usages

**Present Tense**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Affirmative</strong></th>
<th><strong>Negative</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>paainchha (is found)</td>
<td>paainna, paaldaina.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chaahinchha (is needed)</td>
<td>chaahinna, chhaahidaina.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suninchha (is heard)</td>
<td>suninna, sunidaina.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dekhinchha (is seen)</td>
<td>dekhinna, dekhidaina.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Tense**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Affirmative</strong></th>
<th><strong>Negative</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>paaaiyo</td>
<td>paaiena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chaahiiyo</td>
<td>chaahiena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suniyo</td>
<td>suniena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dekhiiyo</td>
<td>dekhiena</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Formation of impersonal verbs**

a) All transitive verbs can become impersonal by adding the suffix ‘i’ to the root.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Transitive Verb</th>
<th>Impersonal Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dekhnu (to see)</td>
<td>dekhinchha (It is seen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dinu (to give)</td>
<td>diinchha (It is given)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garnu (to do)</td>
<td>garinchha (It is done)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. ‘kati parchha’?— is one of the many ways of asking the price of a commodity.
LESSON 6.

VOCABULARY

äap mango paakeT packet
aliali a little, a few paisaa paisa
chaahidaina isn’t needed parchha (it) costs
DaT pen ball point pen pardaina does not cost
dherai many, a lot of saaDhe halt
galDaa a brand of cigarettes sisaa kalam pencil
dlit. rhinocerous) sisi bottle
kehi any, some (thing) syaaau apple
khaam envelope tibbati Tibetan
lyaaadinu to bring for some one Thik O. K., all right.
maatra only

PAR I

1. ma bajaar jaane.
   tapaallaai kehi chaahinchha ?
   chaahinchha. I am going to the bazaar.
   Do you need anything ?
   Yes, I do.
2. ke ke chaahinchha ?
   ek baTTaa churoT ra ek
   sisi raksi. What do you need ?
   I need a packet of cigarettes
   and a bottle of local liquor.
3. kun churoT ?
   galDaa. What brand of cigarette ?
   Galda.
4. paisaa dinos. ma lyaaai dinchhu. Give me the money for them
   linos. das rupyiää chha. please. I’ll bring them for you.
   Here’s ten rupees.

28

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
Part II

(a)

1. tapaillaai ke chaahinchha?
   malaai syaau chaahinchha.
   What do you need?
   I need some apples.

2. kati line?
   chhawaTaa line.
   How many do you want?
   I’ll take six.

3. chhawaTaako saaDhe chaar
   rupiyaa parchha.
   Thik chha, dinos.
   It costs four and half rupees
   for six.
   That’s okay. Please give them to me.
   Here, take them please.

4. linos

(b)

1. tibaati jhola kinne?
   nakinne.
   Would you like to buy Tibetan bags?
   No. I don’t want to buy one.

2. kina?
   tapaalko pasalmaa mahango chha.
   They are expensive in your store
   Why not?

3. mahango chhaina.
   euTaako baara rupiyaa
   maatra parchha.
   das rupiyaaamaa dine?
   No, they are not expensive.
   They only cost 12 rupees
   a piece.
   Will you give me one for ten rupees?
   O. K., take it please.

4. dine, la linos

(c)

1. yo pasalmaa sisaakalam
   paainchha?
   paainchha. katiwaTaa line?
   Are pencils available in this store?
   Yes. How many do you want?

2. euTaako kati parchha?
   euTaako ek mohar parchha.
   How much does one cost?
   They are 50 paisa each.
3. Please give me three. Do you also have envelopes?
   Yes, they are available.
4. Give me ten, please.
   Here, please take them.
5. How much is it altogether?
   Two rupees.

(d)

1. Are mangoes available in America?
   Yes.
2. Are mangoes cheap or expensive there?
   A little expensive.
3. How much does one cost?
   They are two rupees a piece.
4. How about here?
   It costs 75 paisa here.

(e)

1. Do you need any pencils?
   No, I do not need any.
2. How about ball-point pens?
   Yes, that I need.
3. Take one. I have lots of them.
   Here is my money.
   That’s not necessary.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. See lesson 5, Grammar notes ≠ 3, for the use of ‘chaahinchha’
2. See lesson 5, Grammar notes ≠ 4, for the use of ‘parchha’
3. ‘pardaina’ — the negative of ‘parchha’ used here to mean ‘not necessary’
LESSON 7

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaunu</td>
<td>to come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aghi</td>
<td>since, ago</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chiTThi</td>
<td>letter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>din</td>
<td>day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaaū</td>
<td>village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haptaa</td>
<td>week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaam</td>
<td>work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kahile</td>
<td>when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kasari</td>
<td>how</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nau</td>
<td>nine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siknu</td>
<td>to learn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thaahaa hunu</td>
<td>to know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tyaspachhi</td>
<td>then (lit. after that)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Part I

1. tapaal nepaalmaa kahile aaeko ?
   dui haptaa bhayo.
   When did you come to Nepal ?
   Two weeks ago.

2. nepaalmaa kati barsa basne ?
   ma nepaalmaa dui barsa basne.
   How many years will you stay in Nepal ?
   I will stay in Nepal for two years.

3. ani ke garne ?
   ahile thaahaa chhaina.
   What will you do then ?
   I don’t know now.

Part II

(a)

1. tyo ke ho ?
   yo kitaab ho.
   What’s that ?
   It’s a book.

2. tyo kasko kitaab ho ?
   yo mero kitaab ho.
   Whose book is that ?
   It’s my book.
3. PaDhnos. tapaai ke gardai hunuhunchha?
    ma paDhdai chhu.
   Read it plese. What are you doing?
   I'm reading.

4. wahāā ke gardai hunuhunchha?
   wahāā paDhdai hunuhunchha.
   What's he (she) doing?
   He (she) is reading.

(b)

1. blyaakborD nira jaanus.
   blyaakborD nira jāādai hunuhunchha? Where are you going?
   ma blyaakborD nira jāādai chhu. I'm going to the black-board.

2. blyaakborDmaa tapaai ko naam lekhnus.
   What are you doing?
   ma aaphno naam lekhdaichhu. I'm writing my own name.

3. tapaale ke gareko?
   maile aaphno naam lekheko.
   What did you do?
   I wrote my name.

4. wahāale ke gareko?
   wahāale aaphno naam lekheko.
   what did he do?
   He wrote his name.

(c)

1. bholi tapaai kahāā jāādai hunuhunchha?
   bholi ma pokharaa jāādaichhu.
   Where are you going tomorrow?
   I'm going to Pokhara.

2. kasari jāādai hunuhunchha?
   ma basmaa jāādai chhu.
   How are you going?
   I'm going by bus.

3. tyahāā kati din basne?
   tin din basne.
   How long will you stay there?
   I'll stay for three days.

4. tyasbachhi ke garne ni?
   tyasbachhi pharkane.
   After that what will you do?
   Then I'll come back.
1. kaapimaa tapaalko naam lekhnus.
   tapaal mero naam lekhdaai hunuhunchha ?
   hoina.

2. kasko naam lekhdaai hunuhunchha ta ?
   ma aaphno naam lekhdai chhau.

3. wahaa kasko naam lekhdaai hunuhunchha ?
   wahaa aaphno naam lekhdaai hunuhunchha.

(d)

Please write your name in note-book.

Are you writing my name ?

No, I'm not.

Whose name are you writing then ?

I'm writing my own name.

Whose name is he writing ?

He is writing his name.

(e)

1. timi ke lekhdaai chhau ?
   ma chiTTThi lekhdai chhau.

2. timi kaslaai chiTTThi lekhdaai chhau ?
   ma saathilaai chiTTThi lekhdaai chhau.

3. timi nepaalimaa chiTTThi lekhdaai chaau ?
   hoina, angrejimaa lekhdai chhau.

What are you writing !

I'm writing a letter.

Who are you writing to ?

I'm writing to my friend.

Are you writing the letter in Nepali ?

No, I'm writing in English.

Grammar Notes

The present progressive form is used:

(a) to describe an action which is taking place currently, such as-

   ma chiTTThi lekhdai chhau.
   uniharu taas kheldaai chhau.

   I'm writing a letter.
   They are playing cards.
(b) to describe an action that will take place in the future though most commonly used only with the verbs 'go' and 'come'.

ma bholi jaadachhu. I'm going tomorrow.
unihar parsi aaadachhan. They are coming the day after tomorrow.

Conjugation of Present Progressive — 'lekhna'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>lekhdaichhu.</th>
<th>I'm writing.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>lekhdaichhas.</td>
<td>you are writing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>lekhdaichha.</td>
<td>He's writing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami</td>
<td>lekhdaichhāû.</td>
<td>we are writing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi</td>
<td>lekhdaichhau.</td>
<td>You are writing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unihar</td>
<td>lekhdaichhan.</td>
<td>They are writing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaal</td>
<td>lekhdai hunuhunchha.</td>
<td>You are writing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LESSON 8

VOCABULARY

aalu       potato       maasu       meat
bajyo      o’clock      maatra     only
mahinaa    mineT       maatra     month
miThaai    minute      maatra     minute
bhaasaa    language.   miThaai     sweets
bihaanako khaanaa morning meal paDhaaunu to teach
bolnu      to speak     pheri       again
dekhnu     to see       ra          and
dherai jaso mostly, usually sadhai always
ghanTaa    hour         salaad     salad
ghaDi      watch        sutnu       to sleep
kahile kaahi sometimes uThnu to get up
khaajaa    snack
khelnu     to play

PART I

1. timro naam ke ho ? What’s your name ?
   mero naam Tim ho. My name is Tim.
2. timi kun bhaasaa bolchhau ? What language do you speak ?
   ma angreji bolchhu. I speak English.
3. ahile timi kun bhaasaa What language are you learning
   sikdaichhau ? presently ?
   ahile ma nepaali sikdaichhu. I’m learning Nepali now.
4. nepaali kati mahinaa paDh- For how many months will you
   chhau ? study Nepali ?
   tin mahinaa paDhchhu. I’ll study Nepali for three months.

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
PART II

(a)

1. tapaai kati baje uThnu hunchha? What time do you usually get up? ma chha baje uThchhu. I get up at 6 o'clock.

2. kati baje sutnuhuncha ni? And what time do you go to bed? ma das baje sutchhu. I go to bed at ten o'clock.

3. tapaaai saat baje ke garnuhunchha? What do you do at seven o'clock? ma saat baje chiyaa ra phul khaanchhu. I have tea and eggs at seven o'clock.

4. tapaai kati baje aphis jaanuhunchha. What time do you go to the office? ma aaTh baje aphis jaanchhu. I go to the office at eight o'clock.

(b)


2. tapaa kahaa kaam garnuhunchha? Where do you work? ma piskormaa kaam garchhu. I work at Peace Corps.


5. kahaa? Where? pokharaako euTaa iskulmaa. At a school which is in Pokhara.

(c)

1. ahile kati bajyo? What time is it now? ahile paaech bajyo. It's five o'clock.
2. Timi sawaa pāāch baje ke garchhau?
   Chiyaa khaanchhu.

3. Phutbal khelna kati baje jaanchhau?
   Phutbal khelna saāDhe pāāch baje jaanchhu.

What are you going to do at five fifteen?
I'll drink some tea.

What time are you going to go to play foot-ball?
I'll go to play foot-ball at five thirty.

(d)

1. Tapaaīko ghadimaa kati bajyo?
   Saat bajna bis mineT bāāki chha.

2. Deraamaa kati baje jaanuhunchha?
   Saat baje jaanchhu.

3. Ani ke garnuhnunchha?
   Daal bhaat khaanchhu.

4. Kati baje sutnuhnunchha?
   Paune das baje sutchhu.

What time is it according to your watch?
It's twenty minutes to seven.

What time are you going to go to your apartment?
I'll go at seven o'clock.

What are you going to do then?
I'll eat dinner.

What time are you going to go to bed?
I'll go to bed at quarter to ten.

(e)

1. Tapaatharu klaasmaa kati baje jaanuhunchha?
   Saat baje jaanchhaā.

2. Tapaaīko nepaali klaas kati ghanTaa hunchha?
   Tin ghanTaa hunchha.

3. Khaanaa kati baje khaanuhunchha?
   SaāDhe das baje.

What time do you go to class?
We go at seven o'clock.

How long is your Nepali class?
Three hours long.

What time do you eat?
At ten thirty.
4. ani ke garnuhunchha ?
   pheri nepali paDhchhain.
   What do you do then ?
   We study Nepali again.

(f)

1. amerikaaliharu bhaat
   khaanchhan ?
   khaadainan.
   Do Americans eat boiled rice ?
   No, they don’t.

2. ke khaanchhan ta ?
   maasu ra aalu khaanchhan
   What do they eat then ?
   They eat meat and potato.

3. sadhai maasu khaanchhan ?
   hoina, kahile kahí khaadainan.
   Do they always eat meat ?
   No, sometimes they don’t.

4. biyar ni ?
   biyar dherai jaso khaanchhan.
   How about beer ?
   Yes, they usually drink beer.

(g)

1. tapaal sadhai raksi khaan-
   nuhunchha ?
   khaanna. kahile kahí
   maatra khaanchhu.
   Do you always drink raksi ?
   No, I don’t. I only drink
   it sometimes.

2. meri ni ?
   kahile pani khaadaina.
   How about Mary ?
   She never drinks.

Grammar Notes

1. Conjugation of simple present tense of ‘bolnu’ – to speak–

   AFFIRMATIVE.

   ma  bolchhu  I speak
   ta  bolchhas You speak
   u   bolchha  He speaks
   haami bolchhaa  We speak
   timi  bolchhau  You speak
   uniharu bolchhan  They speak
   tapaal bolnuhunchha  You speak
2. kati bajyo  
"kati"  
What time is it?  
how much or how many?

In the above expression the literal translation is 'how much time has past'?  
'bajyo' is the past tense of 'bajnu' Strike

sawaa a quarter past (fifteen after)  
saaDhe half past (— thirty)  
paune a quarter to (fifteen to)  

.... bajera.....mineT gayo  
It is....after....  
das bajera pāāch mineT gayo It’s 5 minutes after 10.  
.... bajna.....mineT bāāki chha  
It’s.......to.......  
pāāch bajna das mineT bāāki chha It’s 10 minutes to 5.

3. Note: Do not confuse 'baje' and 'bajyo'.
'bajyo' is used in questions and statements like:

kati bajyo ?  
What time is it ?
saat bajyo.  
It’s seven o’clock.

'baje' is used in expressions like:

saat baje.  
At seven o’clock.
saaDhe pāāch baje.  
At five thirty.

4. 'khilli' is one cigarette. There is no English equivalent for this word.

5. 'nai' is an emphatic particle.

ma aaja nai jaanchhu.  
I’ll definitely go to-day.

aajanai is sometimes contacted to aajai.
LESSON 9

VOCABULARY

aba now keraa banana
baalnu to light nibhaaunu to turn off (light)
batti light paaunu to get
bidyaarthi student pachchis twenty-five
chaalis forty phohar dirty
hernu to look saphaa clean
hijo yesterday tis thirty
kaagati lemon

PART I

(a)

1. tapaalko naam ke ho ?

mero naam Tim ho.

What’s your name ?

My name is Tim.

2. tapaalko ghar kaha haa ho ?

mero ghar amerikaa ho.

Where are you from ?

I’m from the States.

3. tapaal kun bhaashaa bolnuhunchha ?

ma angreji bolchhu.

What language do you speak ?

I speak English.

4. tapaal ahile kun bhaashaa sikdai hunuhunchha ?

ma nepaali sikdaichhu.

What language are you learning now ?

I’m learning Nepali.

5. tapaal kati barsha hunubhayo ?

ma bis barsha bhae.

How old are you ?

I’m twenty years old.

40
1. wahāā kun bhaashaa bolnu-hunchha ?
wahāā angreji bolnuhunchha.
What language does he speak ?
He speaks English.

2. wahāā ke kaam garnuhunchha?
wahāā pis kor swayam sewak hunuhunchha.
What does he do ?
He is a Peace Corps Volunteer.

3. wahāā kun bhaashaa sikdai hunuhunchha ?
wahāā nepaali sikdai hunuhunchha.
What language is he learning ?
He’s learning Nepali.

4. wahāā kati barsha hunubhayo ? How old is he ?
wahāā baaais barsha hunubhayo. He is twenty two years old.

5. wahāā kahāā basnuhunchha ? Where does he live ?
wahāā paaTanmaa basnuhunchha. He lives in Patan.

PART II

(a.)

1. blyaak bordnira jaanos.
tapaai kahāā jaanubhayo ?
ma blyaak bordnira gaē.
Please go to the black board.
Where did you go ?
I went to the black board.

2. blyaakborDmaa tapaiko naam lekhnos.
tapaaille ke lekhnubhayo ?
maile mero naam lekhē.
Please write your name on the black board.
What did you write ?
I wrote my name.

3. blyaak borD saphaa garnos.
tapaaille ke garnubhayo ?
maile blyaakborD saphaa garē.
Please erase (clean) the black board.
What did you do ?
I erased the black board.
4. wahāāle ke garnu bhayō ?
   wahaāle blyaakborD saphaa
garnu bhayō.

   What did he do ?
   He erased the black board.

(b)

1. kaapimaa pachchis lekhnos.
   tapaalle tis lekhnu bhayō ?
   lekhina.

   Please write 25 in your note book.
   Did you write thirty ?
   No, I didn’t.

2. kati lekhnubhayō ta ?
   pachchis lekhē.

   How much did you write then ?
   I wrote twenty five.

3. wahāāle chaalis lekhnubhayō ?
   ahā, lekhnubhaena.

   Did he write forty ?
   No, he didn’t.

4. kati lekhnubhayō ta ?
   pachchis lekhnubhayō.

   How much did he write then ?
   He wrote twenty five.

(c)

1. tyo ke ho ?
   yo kaagati ho.

   What’s that ?
   It’s a lemon.

2. khaanus.
   tapaalle ke garnubhayō ?
   maile kaagati khaaē.

   Eat it, please.
   What did you do ?
   I ate the lemon.

3. kaagati kasto chha ?
   amilo chha.

   How is it ?
   It’s sour.

4. aba yo keraa khaanos.
   tapaalle ke khaanubhayō ?
   maile keraa khaaē.

   Now eat this banana, please
   What did you eat ?
   I ate the banana.

5. keraa amilo chha ?
   chhaina, guiliyo chha.

   Is the banana sour ?
   No, it’s not. It is sweet.
**Grammar Notes**

**Simple past Tense—**

Until now the 'eko' form has been emphasized for the past tense. Although this form is very common you should also learn the conjugated forms for each gender.

**Conjugation of simple past tense.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a) Intransitive verb</th>
<th>‘to go’</th>
<th>‘jaanu’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRONOUN</strong></td>
<td><strong>AFFIRMATIVE</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEGATIVE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>gaē</td>
<td>gaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>gais</td>
<td>gainas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>gayo</td>
<td>gaena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami</td>
<td>gayaū</td>
<td>gaenaū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi</td>
<td>gayau</td>
<td>gaenan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>gae</td>
<td>jaanubhaena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaal</td>
<td>jaanubhayao</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>b) Transitive verb</th>
<th>‘to write’</th>
<th>‘lekhnu’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRONOUN</strong></td>
<td><strong>AFFIRMATIVE</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEGATIVE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maile</td>
<td>lekhe</td>
<td>lekhina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taille</td>
<td>lekhis</td>
<td>lekhinas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usle</td>
<td>lekhyo</td>
<td>lekhenas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haamile</td>
<td>lekhyau</td>
<td>lekhenau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timile</td>
<td>lekhyau</td>
<td>lekhenan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharule</td>
<td>lekhe</td>
<td>lekhnubhaena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaalle</td>
<td>lekhnubhayo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note— the suffix ‘le’ is used for all persons when they are the subject of transitive verbs in the simple past tense.
2. kati ghantaa khelnubhayo?  dui ghantaa khelē.
How long did you play?  I played for two hours.
3. tapaalāai thakaai laagyo ki  laagena?
   asaadhyai thakaai laagyo.  
Did you get tired or not?  I got very tired.
4. ke garnu bhayo ta?  aaraam gare.
What did you do then?  I rested.

(d.)

1. hijo diisō aahunubhena ni.  kin?
   aaina. alchhi laagyo.
   You didn’t come yesterday.  Why?
   No, I didn’t. I felt lazy.
2. dinbhari ke garnu bhayo ni?
   gharmai base.
   What did you do all day?  I stayed at home.
3. beluki ni?
   beluki raamkāa gaē.
   How about in the evening?  I went to Ram’s in the evening.
4. raamkāa ke garnu bhayo?
   raksi khaayau, tas khelyaū.
   What did you do at Ram’s?  We drank raksi and played cards.
5. tapalāai raksi laagyo  ki laagena?
   ekdam laagyo.
   Did you get drunk or did you stay sober?  I got very drunk.

**COMPREHENSION**

ramesh ko Thaamāa ekla chha. u nepali pāDhdai chha. usko aamaa ko Thaamāa aahun bhayo ra bhannubhayo, “ramesh! tīmi-
laai bhok laagyo holaa. khaajaa khaana aau. rot‘ti chiyaa ra biskuT
khaau.” rameshle bhanyo, “malaai bhok laageko chhaina, aamaa. tara
malaai tirkhaa laageko chha. malaai ek gilaas paani dinos”. aamaale
rameshlaai ek gilaas paani dinu bhayo. ani rameshle bhanyo, “aaja

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
ghoDe jaatrra ho. TuDikhelmaa dhumDhamaam ramaailo hunchha. ma pani herna jaanchhu.”

QUESTIONS—

1. ramesh koThaamaa saathiaga chha ?
2. u ke gardai chha ?
3. rameshko aamaale ke bhannubhayo ?
4. rameshlaai bhok laageho chha ?
5. rameshlaai tirkhao laageko chha ki chhaina ?
6. rameshle ke bhanyo ?
7. aaja diito ramesh khaa jaancha ?
8. kina ?

GRAMMAR Notes

1. ‘ghoDe jaatrra’ is a festival of horse-racing observed only in the Kathmandu valley.
2. ‘kattiko ramaailo’— how enjoyable, how pleasant, how nice
3. Indiomatic usage of ‘iaagyo’. This form is taken from the infinitive ‘iaagnu’ and in essence is used to describe feelings, sensations, observations or effects.
4. When the subject is a pronoun or the name of a person in a sentence with ‘iaagyo’ used as described in no. 5 above, ‘laai’ is added to it e.g. ‘ma’ becomes ‘malaai’ Dev’ becomes ‘Devlaai’. The verb form is constant throughout. Note the contexts in which it is used:

| maalaai bhok laagyo. | I’m hungry. |
| uslaai tirkhao laagyo. | He’s thirsty. |
| uniharulaai nidraa laagyo. | They are sleepy. |
| timilaai rughaa laagyo. | You have a cold. |
| ghaam laagyo. | The sun is out. |
| baadal laagyo. | It’s cloudy. |
| maalaai ringaTaa laagyo. | I feel dizzy. |
| haamilai jaaDo laagyo. | We’re cold. |
| timilaai thakaai laagyo. | You’re tired. |
maalaai garmi laagyo. I’m hot.
haawaa laagyo. The wind is blowing.
(mIt’s windy)
malaai paTyaar laagyo. I’m bored.

The negative is laageko chhaina formed by ‘eko chhaina’ to the verb stem ‘laag’
example.

maalaai tirkhaa laageko chhaina. I’m not thirsty.
LESSON 11

VOCABULARY

aaitabaar  Sunday  parsley  day after tomorrow
aaune  coming, next  paune  quarter to  (used as an adjective)  roTi  bread
as  day before  sombaar  Monday
baar  day  sorha  Sixteen
bihibaar  Thursday
budhabaar  Wednesday
geeko  gone, last  terha  thirteen  (used as an adjective)  thie  was (first person)
gate  date (in reference to Nepali lunar calendar)
koThaa  room
kyaalenDar  calendar
meraa  mine (plural)
mangalbaar  Tuesday

PART I

1. tyo  ke  ho  ?
   tyo  kyaalenDar  ho.
   What’s that ?
   It’s a calendar.
2. aaja  ke  baar  ho  ?
   aaja sombaar  ho  ?
   What day is it to-day ?
   To-day is Monday.
3. hijo  ke  baar  ho  ?
   hijo  aaitabaar  ho.
   What day was yesterday ?
   Yesterday was Sunday.

49
4. bholi ke baar ho ?
   bholi mangalbaar ho.

5. asti ke baar ho ?
   asti shaniibaar ho.

6. parsi ke baar ho ?
   parsi budha baar ho.

   What is it tomorrow ?
   Tomorrow is Tuesday.

   What was the day before yesterday?
   The day before yesterday was Saturday.

   What's day after tomorrow ?
   The day after tomorrow is Wednesday.

(b)

1. aaja ke baar ho ?
   aaja aitaabar ho.

2. aaja bihaana tapaal kati
   baje uThnubhayo ?
   saat baje uThē.

3. aaja bihaana u kati baje uThyo?
   What time did he get up this
   morning ?
   He got up at seven.

4. aaja bihaana tapaalle ke
   khaanu bhayo ?
   maile chiyaa ra roTi khaaē.

   I had tea and bread.

PART II

(a)

1. Dhokaa kholnos, bab.
   Jim, bab ke gardaichha ?
   u Dhokaa kholdaichha.

2. bab ! tapaalle ke garnu bhayo ?
   Bob ! What did you do ?
   maile Dhokaa kholē.

   Bob ! Please open the door.
   Jim ! What’s Bob doing ?
   He’s opening the door.

   Bob ! What did you do ?
   I opened the door.
3. tapaaile jhyaal kholnubhayo? Did you open the window? hoina, maile jhyaal kholina. No, I didn’t open the window.

4. wahaale jhyaal kholnubhayo? Did he open the window, aha, kholnubhaena. No, he didn’t.

5. ke kholnubhayo ta? What did he open then? Dhokaa kholnubhayo. He opened the door.


2. tapaalko shaharko naam ke ho? What’s the name of your town? mero shaharko naam Devis ho. The name of my town is Davis.


4. tapaalko shahar Thulo chha ki saano chha? Is your town big or small? saano chha. It’s small.


(b)

1. bab ra Tim! paDhnos. Bob and Tim! Please read.

tapaalharu ke gardai hunu-munchha? What are you doing?

haamiharu paDhaichhaa. We’re reading.
2. uniharu ke gardaichhan?  
    uniharu paDhdai chhan.

3. uniharu kasko kitaab paDhdai chhan?  
    uniharu aaphno aaphno kitaab paDhdai chhau.

4. kitaab Tebulmaa raakhnos.  
    uniharule ke gare?  
    uniharule kitaab Tebulmaa raakhe.

5. ahile kitaabharu kahaa chhan?  
    ahile kitaabharu Tebulmaa chhan.

What are they doing?  
They are reading.

Whose book are they reading?  
They are reading their own books.

Put the books on the table, please.  
What did they do?  
They put the books on the table.

Where are the books now?  
The books are on the table now.

(d)

1. yo ke ho?  
   yo koThaa ho.

2. yo sutne koThaa ho ki paDhne? Is this a bedroom or a reading room?  
   yo paDhne koThaa ho.

3. yo kasko koThaa ho?  
   yo haamro koThaa ho.

4. yo koThaa saphaa chha ki phohor chha?  
   yo koThaa saphaa chha.

5. yo koThaamaa katiwaTaa kursi chhan?  
   yo koThaamaa terha waTaa kursi chhan.

6. yo koThaamaa ahile kati janaa maanchhe chhan?  
   das janaa chhan.

What’s this?  
This is a room.

Is this a bedroom or a reading room?  
It’s a reading room.

Whose room is this?  
This is our room.

Is this room dirty or clean?  
This room is clean.

How many chairs are there in this room?  
There are thirteen chairs in this room.

How many people are there in this room now?  
There are ten.
1. yo kun mahinaa ho ?
   yo kaattik mahinaa ho.
   
2. aaja kati gate ho ?
   aaja das gate ho.
   
3. gaeko mahinaa tapaai kahaa hunuhunthyo ?
   ma amerikaamaa thiie.
   
4. dui mahinaa aghi u kahaa thiyo ?
   dui mahinaa aghi u amerikaamaa thiyo.
   
(f)

1. yo kun mahinaa ho ?
   yo sepTembar ho.
   
2. aaja kati taarikh ho ?
   aaja pandhra taarikh ho.
   
3. DeDh mahinaa aghi tapaal nepaalmaa hunuhunthyo ?
   thiina.
   
4. kahaa hunuhunthyo ta ?
   amerikaamaa thiie
   
5. DeDh mahinaa aghi u nepaalmaa thiyo ?
   thiena.
   
6. kahaa thiyo ta ?
   u amerikaamaa thiyo.
   
What month is this ?
This is the month of Kattik.

What’s the date to-day ?
To-day is the tenth.

Where were you last month ?
I was in the States.

Where was he two months ago ?
He was in the States two months ago.

What month is this ?
This is September.

What is the date to-day ?
To-day is the fifteenth.

Were you in Nepal a month and half ago ?
No, I wasn’t

Where were you then ?
I was in the States.

Was he in Nepal a month and half ago ?
No, he wasn’t.

Where was he then ?
He was in the States.
COMPREHENSION

aja shanibaar ho. shyaam aaja iskul jaadaina. chhuTTi chha. u bihaana aatTh baje uThyo. usle chiyaa, roTi ra euTaa phul khaayo ani u phalphul ra tarkaani kinaa bajaarmaa gayo. u bajaarmaa hiiDera gaena, saaikalmaa gayo.

QUESTIONS—
1. aja ke baar ho ?
2. shyaam aaja iskul jaanchha ?
3. kina ?
4. u bihaana kati baje uThyo ?
5. usle ke ke khaayo ?
6. ani u khaa gayo ?
7. kina ?
8. u bajaarmaa hiiDera gayo ?
9. kemaa gayo ta ?

GRAMMAR NOTES
1. Days of the week.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaitabaar</td>
<td>Sunday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sombaar</td>
<td>Monday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mangalbaar</td>
<td>Tuesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>budhabaar</td>
<td>Wednesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bihibaar</td>
<td>Thursday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shukrabaar</td>
<td>Friday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shanibaar</td>
<td>Saturday</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. Dropping the 'u' from the infinitive verb root and adding 'e' does not only result in the informal future Tense so common in conversational Nepali, but also in the common formation of descriptive adjective e.g. -sutne koThaa, paDhne kitaab etc.

Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOT</th>
<th>PARTICIPLE</th>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>TRANSLATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>khaanu</td>
<td>khaane</td>
<td>kuraa</td>
<td>things to eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jaanu</td>
<td>jaane</td>
<td>maanchhe</td>
<td>the man who is going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lekhnu</td>
<td>lekhne</td>
<td>kalam</td>
<td>writing pen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siknu</td>
<td>sikne</td>
<td>kitaab</td>
<td>learning book</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LESSON 12

VOCABULARY

aa'khaa eye kapaal hair (of the head)
aglaa (agio) tall khairo brown
charaa bird khuTTa leg
cchhoTo short (as opposed to long)
daayaa right (as opposed to left)
gaaI cow Taauko head
hocho short (as opposed to tall)

PART I

1. tapaaI neapaal aaeko kati bhayo ? tin haptaa bhayo. How long have you been in Nepal ? it's been three weeks.
2. tapaaI aaja bholi ke gardai hunuhunchha ? ma aajabholi nepaali sikdai chhu. What are you doing these days ? I'm learning Nepali these days.
3. tapaaI eklaI sikdai hunu hunchha ? hoina, mero saathi pani sikdai chha. Are you learning on your own ? No, my friend is also learning.
4. tapaaIko saathi pani amerikaali ho ? ho. Is your friend also an American ? Yes, he is.
PART II

(a)

1. tyo ke ho ?
   yo mero taauko ho.  
   What is that ?
   This is my head.

2. tyo ke ho ni ?
   yo mero kapaal ho.
   What about that ?
   This is my hair.

3. tapaiko kapaal kaalo chha ki khairo ?
   mero kapaal khairo chha.
   Is your hair black or brown ?
   My hair is brown.

4. tapaiko kapaal laamo chha ki chhoTo ?
   mero kapaal laamo chha.
   Is your hair long or short ?
   My hair is long.

(b)

1. tyo ke ho ?
   yo aakhaa ho.
   What is that ?
   This is an eye.

2. tapaiko katiwaTaa aakhaa chhan ?
   mero duwiwaTaa aakhaa chhan.
   How many eyes do you have ?
   I have two eyes.

3. tapaiko daayaa aakhaa chhunos.
   maile mero aakhaa chhoe.
   Touch your right eye, please.
   What did you do ?
   I touched my eye.

4. kun chaahti aakhaa chhunubhayo ?
   daayaa aakhaa chhoe.
   Which eye did you touch ?
   I touched my right eye.

(e)

1. maanchheko katiwaTaa khuTTaa hunchhan ?
   duiwaTaa.
   How many feet does a man have ?
   Two.
2. gaaiiko katiwaTaa khuTTaa hunchhan ni ? chaarwaTaa hunchhan. How many feet does a cow have? It has four feet.
3. charaako pani chaarwatTaa khuTTaa hunchhan? hūdianan. Does a bird also have four feet? No, it doesn’t.
4. katiwaTaa hunchhan ta? duiwaTaa maatra. How many feet does it have then? Only two.

(d)
1. sabai amerikaaliharu aglaa hunchhan? hūdainan. Are all Americans tall? No, they aren’t.
2. tapaalko baa aglo hunuhunchha? Is your father tall? Yes, he is.
3. tapaalko aamaa ni? wahāā ta hocho hunuhunchha. How about your mother? She is short.
4. tapaalki kati aglo hunuhunchha? How tall are you? I’m 5 ft. 11 inches.

(e)
2. tapaalko ākhaa khulaa chhan? Are your eyes open? No, they are not.
4. wahākāa ākhaa khulaa chhan ki banda chhan ? khullaa chhan.

Are his eyes open or closed ?

They are open.

Grammar Notes

1. 'chhu' is the present tense first person, singular from of the verb 'to be' huma I.
   It is conjugated as follows--

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUNS</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>chhu</td>
<td>chhaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tä</td>
<td>chhas</td>
<td>chainas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>chha</td>
<td>chhaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami</td>
<td>chhaū</td>
<td>chhaīnaū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi</td>
<td>chhau</td>
<td>chhaīnau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>chhan</td>
<td>chhaīnan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaal</td>
<td>hunuhunchha</td>
<td>hunuhunna</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Note the difference:

I am here — ma yahā chhu.

I am Ram — ma raam hū.

3. 'chha' and 'hunchha'—

In the sentence 'usko euTaa Taauko chha' (He has one head), 'chha' is used to express the idea of possession or to have. 'hunchha' in the sentence 'charaako duīTaa khuTTaa hunchha' (Birds have two legs) is used in the same way. However, the difference is that 'chha' is used when stating specifics whereas 'hunchha' is used for making generalization. Study the following examples.

jim aglo chha. Jim (specific person) is tall.
amerikaaaliharu aglaa hunchhan. Americans (in general) are tall.
LESSON 13

VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>baneko</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>barsha</td>
<td>year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bihaa</td>
<td>wedding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chhoraa</td>
<td>son</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chhori</td>
<td>daughter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>galaichhaa</td>
<td>carpet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaarkhaanaa</td>
<td>factory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kunni</td>
<td>don’t know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pariwaar</td>
<td>family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saya</td>
<td>hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>made</td>
<td>year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wedding</td>
<td>marriage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>son</td>
<td>daughter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PART I

(a)

1. tapaalko pariwaarmaa kati janaa chhan ?
   paâch janaa.  
   How many people are there in your family ?
   Five.

2. ko ko ?
   baa, aamaa, bhaai, bahini ra ma.  
   Who are they ?
   Father, mother, younger brother, younger sister, and myself.

3. tapaalko baa ke kaam garnuhunchha ?
   kalejmaa paDhaaunu hunchha.  
   What does your father do ?
   He teaches in a college.

4. tapaalko bhaai ke garchha ni ?
   iskulmaa paDhchha.  
   What does your younger brother do ?
   He goes to school.

5. bahini ni ?
   u pani iskulmaa paDhchha.  
   How about your younger sister ?
   She also goes to school.

60
1. timro daai hunuhunchha?
   hunuhunchha.
2. wahāā kahāā hunuhunchha?
   wahāā Devismaa hunuhunchha.
3. wahāā ke kaam garnu–
   hunchha?
   wahāā kaarkhaanaamāa kaam
   garnu hunchha.
4. wahāā kati barsha hunu bhayo?
   wahāā paltis barsha hunubhayo
5. wahaako bihaa bhayo?
   bhayo.
6. chhoraa chhori chhan ki
   chaainan?
   chhan.
7. katijanaa chhan?
   ekjanaa chhori ra duijanaa
   chhoraa.

   Part II

(a)

1. yo sutne koThaa ho ki paDhne? Is this a bed room or a reading
   room?
sutne.
   It’s a bed-room.
2. yo koThaamāa kati janaa
   sutchhan?
   duijanaa sutchhan
   How many people sleep in this
   room?
   Two people sleep in this room.
3. **tapaa\l pani yo ko** Thaamaa sutnuhunchha ? sутдина.
   Do you also sleep in this room ?
   No, I don’t.

4. **bill sutchha ta ?**
   Does Bill sleep here, then ?
   No, he doesn’t sleep here either.

5. **ko sutchha ta ?**
   Whc sleeps here, then
   Tom and Mike.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(b)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1. tapaalko galalchha nayāā ho ki puraano ?</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puraano.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2. kahāā baneko ?</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solukhumbumaa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3. tapaal le kahile kinnu bhayo ?</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tin barsha bhayo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kati liyo ?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chaar saya.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(c)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1. yo chij kahāā baneko ho ?</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jirimaa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2. yo keko dudhbaaTa baneko ho ?</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chaūri gaaiko dudhbaaTa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3. yasto chij kaaThmaanDumaa kahāā paainchha ?</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niuroDmaa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4. ek kiloko kati parchha?</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kunīi, malaai thaaahaa chhaina.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

62

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
1. a) ‘tapsa kati barsha hunubhayo?’—(lit. *How many years did you become ?*) is one of the ways of asking someone’s age. The verb is conjugated according to the pronoun in the subject. For examples—

   u kati barsha bhayo ?        How old is he ?
timi kati barsha bhayau ?     How old are you ?
ma kati barsha bhaæ ?         How old am I ?

b) *taapaal ko umer kati bhayao?’* is another common way of asking the same question. The verb ‘*bhayo*’ in this sentence is not conjugated and therefore remains the same irrespective of the pronoun because the subject is ‘*umer*’ not the pronoun.

2. *wahaäko bihaa bhayo ?*  *Is he married ?*
   As in (d) above, the verb ‘*bhayo*’ is not conjugated regardless of the pronoun—

   mero bihaa bhayo.  (neg. mero bihaa bhaeko chhaina)
usko bihaa bhayo.  (neg. usko bihaa bhaeko chaina)
timro bihaa bhayo. (neg. timro bihaa bhaeko chaaina)

3. *sutne kolhaa*  ‘*sutne*’ in this expression is an infinitival participle used as a descriptive adjective. This is very common in Nepali.

   khaanekuraa  food stuffs (lit. eating things)
kaamgarne maanche–worker (lit. working man)
bokne maanchhe porter (lit. carrying man)

4. *kati liyo ?* (lit. *How much did (he) take?*) is one of the ways of asking ‘*How much did it cost*’

   Here are some of the other equally common ways of asking the same question—

   kati paryo ?       (lit-How much did it fall ?)
kati dinu bhayo ? (lit-How much did you give ?)
kati tirnu bhayo ? (lit-How much did you pay ?)
kati haalnu bhayo ? (lit-How much did you put ?)
LESSON 14

VOCABULARY

andaaji | approximately, never  
akilepani | about game  
dubai | both want  
ekdam | very much (emphatic) to like  
himaal | mountain (with snow) lake  
jaannu | to know that much,  
jhandai | almost, not quite as much as that

PART I

1. tapaai nepaalmaa aaeko kati bhayo ?  
jhandaai dui mahinaa bhayo.  

2. tapaal kasari aunubhayo ?  
hawaajjahaajmaa aae.  

3. tapaal ko ghar dekhi yahaa samma auna kati Dalar laagchha ?  
andaaji nau saya Dalar.  

4. tapaallaaai tyatikaa paisaa kasle diyo ?  
mero aphisle.  

5. tapaal kun aphismaa kaam garnu hunchha ?  
ma piskor aphismaa kaam garchhu.  

How long have you been in Nepal ?  
It's been almost two months.  

How did you come ?  
I came by plane.  

How much does it cost to come here from your home ?  
It costs bout nine hundred dollars.  

Who gave you that much money ?  
My office.  

At which office do you work ?  
I work at the Peace Corps office.
PART II

(a)

1. tapaal pokharaamaa jaanu bhayo ?
   ma pokharaamaa gae.
   Did you go to Pohhara ?
   Yes, I went to Pohhara.

2. kasari jaanu bhayo ?
   hawahajahaajmaa gae.
   How did you go ?
   I went by plane.

   Did you lihe Pokhara?
   Yes, I liked it very much.

4. pokharaamaa ke ke man paryo?
   himaal ra taal man paryo.
   What did you like in Pokhara?
   I liked the mountains and the lake.

(b)

1. timilaai sabbhandaa kun khel man parchha ?
   malaai phuTbal man parchha.
   Which game do you like the best?
   I like soccer (foot-baall).

2. aru ke man parchha ?
   baaskeTabal pani man parcha.
   What else do you like?
   I also like basketball.

3. Tenis ni ?
   Tenis man pardaina.
   How about Tennis?
   I don’t like Tennis.

4. kina ?
   kinabhane ma Tenis khelna jaandina.
   Why?
   Because I don’t know how to play Tennis.

(c)

1. timilaai biyar man parchha ?
   man parchha.
   Do you like beer?
   Yes, I do.
2. How about home-made liquor?
   raksi ta man pardaina.

3. Do you always drink beer?
   timi biyar sadhai khaanchhau?
   ahā khanna, kahile kaahi
   khaanchhu.

4. How about raksi?
   raksi ta kahilepani khaanna.

5. What does your friend like? Raksi
   parchha ki biyar man parchha?
   uslaai dubai man parchha.

(d)

1. What did you feel like eating
   yesterday?
   hijo tapaailaai ke khaana man
   laagyo ?
   hijo malaai momo khaana man
   laagyo .

2. Did you go and eat momos then?
   tapaal momo khaana jaanu
   bhayo ta ?
   ho, gaē.

3. Where did you go to eat momos?
   momo khaana tapaal kahāa
   jaanu bhayo ?
   om resTurāamaa gaē.

4. How did you like the momos there?
   tyahāa momo kasto laagyo ?
   miTho laagyo.

5. What else did you have?
   aru ke ke khaanubhayo ?
   aru kehi pari khaalna.

(e)

1. What did you do yesterday after-
   noon?
   hijo diūso ke garnubhayo ?
   hindi sinemaa herna gaē.


Which movie did you see? Hathi mera Sathi.
Did you like it? I liked it very much.
Did you eat out or at home yesterday evening? I ate out.
Why? I wanted to have japanese food yesterday.
How did you like it? I didn’t like it that much.

(f)

1. Timi hijo kina klaasmaa aeu? Yesterday why didn’t you come to class?
Malaai nepali padhna man laagena.


3. Ahile padhna man laageko chha ta? Ahile ta man laageko chha.

4. Kati ghanTa samaa padchhau? How many hours are you going to study?
Dui ghanTa samma padchhuh hola.

Yes, I feel like it.

Grammar Notes.

1. ‘man parnu’ is another impersonal verb. The subject of a sentence with ‘man parnu’ always takes ‘laai’.

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
Examples.

malaai raksi man pardaina.       I don’t like raksi.
mero baalaai daal bhaat         My father likes daal-bhaat.
man parchha.                    
timilaai ke man parchha ?       What do you like ?

The personal from of ‘man parnu’ is ‘man paraaunu’. ‘man paraaunu’ also means ‘to like’ but this from is conjugated according to the pronouns.

For Example

ma suntalaa man paraauchhu.      I like oranges.
u suntalaa man paraauchcha.       He likes oranges.

Note that ‘laal’ is not used in the above examples.

Note: The impersonal and personal forms of ‘man parnu’ can be used interchangeably depending on the speaker’s preference. Generally though, the impersonal form is more frequently heard.

2. man laagnu’ is similar to ‘man parnu’ and therefore the subject again requires ‘laal’
LESSON 15

VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>belaayet</td>
<td>Britain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaañ</td>
<td>village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hũ</td>
<td>am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaam garnu</td>
<td>to work</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

friend
city
with
volunteer

PART I

1. tapaalko ghar kahãã ho ? Where are you from ?
   amerikaa. America.

2. tapaal nepaalmaa aaeko kati How long has it been since you
   bhayo ? came to Nepal ?
   ma nepaalmaa aaeko tin haptaa It has been three weeks.
   bhayo.

3. yahãã ke kaam garnu hunchha? What do you do here ?
   ma piskor swayam sewak hũ. I am a Peace Corps volunteer.

4. tapaal yahãã kati basnuhunchha? How long will you stay here ?
   ma dui barsha baschhu. I’ll stay here for two years.

5. gaaãmaa basnu hunchha ki Are you going to live in a village
   shaharmaa ? or in a city ?
   gaaãmaa. In a village

PART II

(a)

1. tapaal sanga kitaab chhan ? Do you have any books with you ?
   masanga kitaab chhan. Yes, I’ve books with me.
2. tapaalsanga katiwaTaa kitaab chhan ?
   masanga duiTaa kitaab chhan.
   How many do you have ?
   I have two books.

3. tapaalsanga kalam chha ki chhaina ?
   masanga kalam chha.
   Do you have a pen with you or not ?
   Yes, I do.

4. katiwaTaa ?
   euTaa maatra.
   How many ?
   Only one.

(b)

1. tapaalkc moTar chha ?
   mero moTar chhaina.
   Do you have a car ?
   No, I don’t have a car.

2. taapaal kasari aphis jaanuhun-chha ?
   saaikalmaa.
   How do you go to the office ?
   On a bicycle.

3. tapaalko saaikal kahāa baneko?
   inDiyaamaa.
   Where was your bicycle made ?
   In India.

4. kati liyo ?
   saat saya rupiyāā.
   How much did it cost ?
   Seven hundred rupees.

(c)

1. tapaalsanga ghaDi chha ?
   masanga ghaDi chha.
   Do you have a watch ?
   Yes, I have a watch.

2. tapaalko ghaDi kahāa baneko ho ?
   mero ghaDi jaapanmaa baneko ho.
   Where was your watch made ?
   My watch was made in Japan.

3. tyo ghaDiko kati parchha ?
   tis Dalar parchha
   How much does that watch cost ?
   It cost thirty dollars.
Where did you buy that watch?
I bought my watch in Hong-kong.

Where is your place?
It's in Patan.

Who else lives with you?
Two friends of mine live there With me.

Where are they from?
One is from Britain and the other one is from America.

**Grammar Notes**

1. 'sanga and ko' both express the idea of possession or 'to have'. However, there is distinct difference between them in common usage. For example.

   a) 'ma sanga chha' means 'I have with me,' in my possession at the moment, masanga churoT chha. - I have cigarettes with me now. masanga salaai chhaina. - I don't have any matches with me now.

   ma sanga das rupiyaa maatra chha. I've only ten rupees with me.

   b) 'mero chha' means *I have one, own one*, but it could be anywhere, not necessarily with me at the time.

   mero ghar chhaina. I don’t have a house.
   mero āıkhaa chhan. I have eyes.
   mero gaai chha. I have a cow.

Note- ‘sanga’ cannot be used in the examples given in (b) above.
LESSON 16

VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>aghi</th>
<th>ago</th>
<th>samma</th>
<th>until, up to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dekhi</td>
<td>from</td>
<td>TurisT</td>
<td>tourist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pugnu</td>
<td>to be enough</td>
<td>umaaleho</td>
<td>boiled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PART I

1. wahāā ko hunuhunchha ?
   wahāā Tam hunuhunchha.
   Who is he ?
   That’s Tom.

2. wahāāko ghar kahāā ho ni ?
   wahāāko ghar amerikaa ho.
   Where is his home ?
   His home is in America.

3. wahāā TurisT hunuhunchha ?
   hoina, wahāā pani swayam sewak hunnuhunchha
   Is he a tourist ?
   No, he is also a volunteer.

4. wahāā kahile nepaal aeko ?
   dui haptaa aghi.
   When did he come to Nepal ?
   Two weeks ago.

PART II

(a)

1. tyo kasko kalam ho ?
   yo mero kalam ho.
   Whose pen is that ?
   This is my pen.

2. tapaāľko kalam kasto chha ?
   mero kalam kaalo chha.
   What color is your pen ?
   My pen is black.

3. tapaāľko naam lekhnos.
   tapaāľle ke garnubhayo ?
   maile aaphno naam lekhē.
   Write your name, please.
   What did you do ?
   I wrote my name.

72
4. वहाले के गमू भयो ?
   वहाले आफ्नो नाम लेख्नु भयो।
   What did he do ?
   He wrote his name.

(b)

1. त्यो कस्को झोला हो ?
   यो मेरो झोला हो।
   Whose shoulder-bag is that ?
   It's my bag.
2. तपाईले झोला कस्तो छाँ ?
   मेरो झोला रंगी-चांगी छाँ।
   What is your bag like ?
   My bag is multi-colored.
3. तपाईले झोला फोहर छाँ ?
   चाइनाका, सफाई छाँ।
   Is your bag dirty ?
   No, it's clean.
4. तपाईले झोला सानो छाँ कि
   ठुलो छाँ ?
   सानो छाँ।
   Is your bag small or big ?
   It's small.

(c)

1. तिमिहरु कीता ब पढ्दा।
   तिमिहरु के गर्दै छाँ।
   haamiharun paDhyau।
   Read your books.
   We are reading.
2. उनिहरु के गर्दै छाँ।
   उनिहरु पढेपछाँ।
   तिमिहरु की गर्दै छाँ।
   What are you doing ?
   We are reading.
3. पुग्यो।
   तिमिहरुले के गर्दै ?
   तिमिहरुले पढेपछाँ।
   That's enough.
   What did you do ?
   We read the books.

(d)

1. ज्याल बाँडा गर्नो।
   तपाईले ठोका बाँडा गर्नु भयो ?
   Close the window, please.
   Did you close the door ?
hoina, maile Dhohaa banda garina.

2. ke garnubhayo ta ?
maile jhyaal banda garē.

3. wahaale Dhokaa banda
garnubhayo ?
hoina, wahaale Dhokaa banda
garnu bhaena.

4. ke garnubhayo ta ?
wahaale jhyaal banda garnu-
bhayo.

No, I don't close the door.

What did you do then ?
I closed the window.

Did he close the door ?
No, he didn't close the door.

What did he do then ?
He closed the window.

COMPREHENSION

Devko ghar amerika hoo. dui haptaa aghi u nepal aayo. u angreji bolchha. ahile u nepaali sikdaichha. Dev saat bajedekhi nau baje
samma nepaali sikcha, diūso baarha baje u khaariaa khaana hoTelmaa jaanchha. u daal bhaat khādaina. u roti tarkaari maasu ra dudh
khaanchha. u maaleko paani maatra khaanchha.

QUESTIONS –

1. Devko ghar amerikaa ho ?
2. u kahiie nepaal aayo ?
3. u kun bhaashaa bolchha ?
4. ahile u kun bhaashaa sikdaichha ?
5. u kati bajedekhi kati bajesamaa nepaali sikchha ?
6. Dev diūso baarha baje kina hoTelmaa jaanchha ?
7. u daal bhaat khaanchha ?
8. u ke ke khaanchha ?
9. u kasto paani khaanchha ?
10. tapaal kasto paani khaanuhunchha ?
Notes

1. The Nepali word for ‘tourist’ is paryaTak’ but the English word is also commonly used.

2. ‘dekhi’ implies ‘since’ or ‘from’ and is used as follows:

   unihar u saT bajs dekhi nepaali They study Nepali from eight
   padhchhan. o’clock on.
   u hijodekhi biraami chha. He’s been sick since yesterday.

‘dekhi’ is also used in other instances. Examples will be found in later lessons.

3. ‘baaTa’ means ‘from’ but in a different sense than ‘dekhi.

Note the following:

   yo bas paaTanbaaTa aauchha. This bus comes from Patan.
   ma gharbaaTa aauaichu. I’m coming from my home.

4. ‘samma” – ‘to until, up to, as far as’.

   yo bas bhaktapursamma This bus goes as far as Bhaktapur.
   jaanchha. We work until five o’clock.
   haami pāāch baje samma kaam
   garchhau
LESSON 17

VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bajai</td>
<td>grandmother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dahi</td>
<td>yogurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kolaagi</td>
<td>for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khukuri</td>
<td>Gorkha knife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lugaa</td>
<td>dress, clothes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nayaa</td>
<td>new</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phalphul</td>
<td>fruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puraano</td>
<td>old</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PART I

1. aaja ke baar ho ?
   aaja sombaar ho.
   What day is it today ?
   Today is Monday.

2. yo kun mahinaa ho ?
   yo mangsir mahinaa ho.
   What month is this ?
   This is the month of Mangsir.

3. aaja kati gate ho ?
   aaja bis gate ho.
   What is the date to day?
   Today is the 20th.

4. bholi kati gate ho ?
   bholi ekkaais gate ho.
   What is the date tomorrow ?
   Tomorrow is the 21st.

5. parsi ni ?
   parsi baaais gate ho.
   What about the day after tomorrow?
   The day after tomorrorow is the 22nd.

PART II

(a)

1. tapaaIsanga kalam chha ?
   chha.
   Do you have a pen ?
   Yes, I do.

2. kalam keko laagi ho ?
   kalam lekhnako laagi ho.
   What is a pen for ?
   For writing

76
3. tapaalko naam lekhnos.  
   tapaaile lekhnubhayo ?  
   maile naam lekhe.

4. wahaale ke garnubhayo ?  
   wahaale naam lekhnubhayo.

5. wahaale tapaalko naam  
   lekhnubhayo ?  
   hoina, wahaale mero naam  
   lekhnubhaena.

6. wahaale kasko naam lekhnubhayo ta ?  
   wahaale aaphno naam  
   lekhnubhayo.

Write your name please.
What did you write?
I wrote my name.

What did he do?
He wrote his name.

Did he write your name?
No, he didn’t write my name.

Whose name did he write then?
He wrote his own name.

1. tapaalsanga kitaab chha ?  
   chha.

2. kitaab keko laagi ho ?  
   paDhnako laagi.

3. paDhnus.  
   tapaaile ke garnubhayo ?  
   maile paDhe

4. tapaaile ke paDhnubhayo ?  
   maile kitaab paDhe.

5. tapaaile mero kitaab paDhnubhayo ?  
   hoina, maile tapaalko kitaab  
   paDhina.

6. kasko kitaab paDhnubhayo ta ?  
   Whose book did you read, then ?  
  maile mero kitaab paDhe.

Do you have a book?
Yes, I do.

What is a book for?
For reading.

Please read.
I read the book.

What did you read?
I read the book.

Did you read my book?
No, I didn’t read your book.

Whose book did you read, then?
I read my book.
(c)

1. tyo kasko jholaa ho ?
   yo mero jholaa ho.
2. tapaalko jholaa puraano chha?
   chhaina, nayaa chha.
3. tyo jholaa paDhnako laagi ho?
   hoina.
4. keko laagi ho ta ?
   chij-bij raakhnalaai.
5. tapaal jholaaamaa ke raakhnu-
   hunchha ?
   mero kitaab, kaapi ra kalam.

Whose shoulder bag is that ?
This is my bag.
Is your bag old ?
No, it’s new.
Is that bag for reading ?
No, it’s not.
What is it for then ?
To put things into.
What do you put in your bag ?
My book, copy and pen.

(d)

1. aaja belukaako laagi maasu
   chha. chha.
2. yo dahi kahileko laagi ho ni ?
   tyo aaj diusokolaagi ho.
3. diusokolaagi phal phul chhaina?
   chha.
4. ke ke chha ?
   syaau, suntalaa ra keraa.

Do we have meat for this evening?
Yes, we do.
When is this yogurt for ?
That’s for this afternoon.
Don’t we have fruit for this afternoon ?
Yes, we do.
What do we have ?
We have apples, oranges and bananas.

(e)

1. yo jho aa kasko laagi kinnubhayo ?
   mero bahiniko laagi.

Who did you buy this bag for ?
For my younger sister.


4. tyo galaṅchha kasko laagi ho ni? yo mero bajaiko laagi ho. Who is that carpet for then? This is for my grandmother.

**Grammar Notes**

1. ‘gate’ or *the date* is used to ask the Nepali date according to the lunar calendar.

   aaja kati gate ho ? What is the Nepalese date to-day ?

   ‘taarikh’—although a Hindi word, it is used to ask the date according to the English calendar.

   aaja kati taarikh ho ? aaj pāäch taarikho What is the date today? Today is the fifth.

2. *ko laagi*.

   (a) It is generally used in the same manner as ‘*for*’ in English:

   mero laagi for me baako laagi for father

   (b) When used in time context also, it means the same as ‘*for*’ in English.

   ma tin haptaakolaagi pohharaa I’m going to Pohhara for three jaanchhu. weeks.

**NOTE**—‘*ko laagi*, is often shortened to ‘laai..

   khaana ho laagi khaanalaai
   baako laagi baalaai
   ek mahinaako laagi eh mahinaalaai
LESSON 18

VOCABULARY

agaaDi in front of najik near
anchal zone najikai nearby
baaTo road, path, trail naksaa map
chakki tablet
chin China paschim west
dakchhin south pachhaaDi behind
desh country paTak times
hiDera on foot purba east
jati about saDah road
kataatira ? in what direction uttar north

PART I

1. tapaalko Deraa kahāā chha ?
gyaaneswarmaa. Where is your apartment ?
It’s in Gyaneswar.
2. yahaabaaTa najik chha ki
TaaDhaa chha ?
najik chha. Is it close by or far from here ?
It’s close by.
3. saaikalmaa kati mineT laagchha? How long does it take by bicycle ?
das mineT. Ten minutes.
4. hiDera kati mineT laagchha ni?
karib pandhra mineT. How many minutes does it take
by foot ?
About fifteen minutes.
5. tapaal hiDera jaanu hunchha
ki saaikalmaa ?
dherai jaso hiDera jaanchhu. Do you walk or go by bicycle ?
I usualy walk
PART II

(a)

1. tyo ke ho ?
   yo naksha ho.
   What is that ?
   This is a map.

2. tyo kun deshko naksha ho ?
   yo nepaalko naksha ho.
   Of which country ?
   This is a map of Nepal.

3. ilaam kataatira parchha ?
   ilaam purbatira parchha.
   What direction is Ilam in ?
   Ilam is in the east.

4. jumlaa kataatira parchha ?
   jumlaa paschintira parchha.
   What direction is Jumla in ?
   Jumlaa is in the west.

5. mustaang kataatira parchha ?
   mustaang uttartira parchha.
   What direction is Mustang in ?
   Mustang is in the north.

6. birganj kataatira parchha ?
   birganj dakchhinmaa parchha ?
   What direction is Birgunj in ?
   Birgunj is in the south.

(b)

1. nepaalko purbamaa kun desh parchha ?
   nepaalko purbamaa inDiyaa parchha.
   Which country is east of Nepal ?
   India is east of Nepal.

2. nepaalko paschimmaa kun desh parchha ni ?
   nepaalko paschimmaa pani inDiyaa parchha.
   Which country is west of Nepal ?
   India is also the west of Nepal.

3. nepaalko uttarmaa kun desh parchha ?
   nepaalko uttarmaa chin parchha.
   Which country is north of Nepal ?
   China is north of Nepal.

4. dakchhinmaa ni ?
   inDiyaa parchha.
   How about in the south ?
   India.
1. pokharaa kun anchalmaa parchha ?
pokharaa ganDaki anchalmaa parchha.

Which zone is Pohhara in ?
Pohhara is in Gandahi zone.

2. kaaThmaanDu pani ganDaki anchalmaa parchha ?
pardaina.

Is Kathmandu also in Gandaki zone ?
No, itn’t.

3. kun anchalmaa parchha ta ?
baagmati anchalmaa parchha.

Which is it in then ?
It’s in Bagmati zone.

4. paaTan ni ?
paaTan pani baagmati anchalmaa parchha.

How about Patan ?
Patan is also in Bagmati zone.

1. tapaalko ghar kun raajyamaa parchha ?
mero ghar Teksaasmaa parchha.

Which state are you from ?
I’m from Texas.

2. Teksaas uttartira parchha ki
dakchhintira parchha ?
Teksaas dakchhintira parchha.

Is Texas in the north or south ?
Texas is in the south.

3. TeksaasbaaTa siyaaTal najik parchha ?
pardaina, dherai TaaDhaa parchha.

Is Seattle close to Texas ?
No, it isn’t. It’s very far.

4. siyaaTal jaana relmaa kati din laagchha ?
dui din laagchha holaa.

How many days does it take to get to Seattle by train ?
It takes about two days.
1. tapaaalko Deraa kahäänira parchha ? Where is your apartment ?
2. solTil hoTelnira. Near the Solatee Hotel.
3. solTil hoTelbaaTa kati mineT laagchha ? How many minutes does it take to
tin minetT jati laagchha. get there from the Soaltee ?
4. baaTobaaTa debretira parchha Is it on the left or right of the
ki daahinetira ? road ?
daahinetira parchha. It’s on the right.
4. taapaalko gharkopachhaaDike chha ? What’s behind your house ?
khet chha. There’s a rice field.
5. agaaDi ni ? And in the front ?
agaaDi saDak chha. There’s a road in the front.

Grammar Notes

1. In this lesson, laagnu. is used for inquiring and stating the amount of time
required to do something:

   saaikalmaa kati mineT laagchha? How many minutes does it take by
   bicycle ?

Note that in the preceding lessons ‘laagnu. was used when referring to the cost of
something and when describing feelings or sensations. There are still more uses
of ‘laagnu’ which will be dealt with in later lessons.

‘laagnu’ is usually used as an impersonal verb. However, in some contexts it can
also function as a personal one.

   ma ghartira laagë. I am on my way home.
   haami ghartira laagyaã we are on our way home.

83
u ghartira laagyo. He's on his way home.
uniharu ghartira laage. They are on their way home.
timi ghartira laagyau. You are on your way home.
tapaal ghartira laagnubhayo. You (hon) are on your way home.

In this sense ‘laagu’ is describing specifically the intention or pre-indication of going home.

2. ‘parnu’- literally means ‘to fall’ as of ‘rain’. However, in this lesson it is used to indicate direction or location.

ebharesT nepaalmaa parchha. Everest lies in Nepal.
pokharaa paschimmaa parchha. Pokhara is in the west.

Note the difference in the two meanings of ‘parnu’ that have been introduced so far.

‘tyo ghaDiko kati parchha ? How much does that watch cost ?
ilaam kataatira parchna ? Which direction is Ilam in ?

‘parnu’ as ‘laagu’ functions both as personal and an impersonal verb. It is shown functioning as an impersonal verb in the examples given in this lesson as well as in lesson 13. Its personal usages will be given in later lessons: Study the following examples

dhankuTaa purba parchha. Dhankuta is in the east.
dhankuTaa purbamaa parchha.
dhankuTaa purbatira parchha. Dhankuta is towards east
dhankuTaa purbapaTTi parchha.
LESSON 17

VOCABULARY

bhaat cooked-rice eklai alone
chamchaa spoon haat hand
chiniyāā Chinese jhiknu to take out
daal lentils kāTaa fork

PART I

1. tapaal kahāā basnuhunchha ?
   ma paaTanmaa baschhu. Where do you live ?
   I live in Patan.
2. eklai ki saathisanga ?
   eklai. Do you live alone or with friends ?
   Alone.
3. paaTanbaaTa yahāā kasari
   aaunuhunchha ?
   basmaa aauchhu. How do you come here from
   Patan ?
   By bus.
4. basmaa kati mineT laagchha ?
   pandhra mineT laagchha. How long does it take by bus ?
   It takes fifteen minutes.

PART II

1. tapaal daal bhaat khaanu
   hunchha ki khaanuhunna ?
   khaanchhu. Do you eat rice or not ?
   Yes, I do.
2. tapaal kele daalbhaat khaanu
   hunchha ?
   ma haatle daal bhaat khaanchhu. I eat rice with my hand.
3. wahāā kele daalbhaat khaanu
   hunchha ?
   wahāā haatle daalbaat khaanu-
   hunchha. What does he eat rice with ?
   He eats rice with his hand.
4. tapaal kele chiniyāā khaanuaa khaanuhunchha?
   kāā Taa chamchaale. How do you eat your Chinese food?
   With a fork and a spoon.

(b)

1. tapaal ko kalam kahāā chhaa?
   mero kalam khaltimaa chha.
   Where is your pen?
   My pen is in my pocket.

2. jhiknos.
   tapaalle ke garnubhayo?
   maile kalam jhikē.
   Please take it out.
   What did you do?
   I took out my pen.

3. tapaal ko naam lekhnos.
   tapaaille ke garnubhayo?
   maile naam lekhē.
   Write your name, please.
   What did you do?
   I wrote my name.

4. tapaalle kele naam lekhnu-
   bhayo?
   maile kalamle naam lekhē.
   What did you write your name
   with?
   I wrote my name with my pen.

5. tapaalle mero nam lekhnu bhayo?
   Did you write my name?
   No, I didn’t.

6. kasko naam lekhnu bhayo ta?
   maile mero naam lekhē.
   Whose name did you write then?
   I wrote my name.

(c)

1. hijo tapaalle kaslaai chīTTThi
   lekhnu bhayo?
   maile baalaai chīTTThi lekhē.
   Who did you write the letter to,
   yesterday?
   I wrote the letter to my father.

2. aaja bihaana tapaalle kastaaai
   chīTTThi lekhnu bhayo?
   aaja bihaana maile bhaailaaai
   chīTTThi lekhē.
   Who did you write a letter to,
   this morning?
   I wrote a letter to my younger
   brother this morning.

3. tapaalle aaja didilaai chīTTThi
   lekhnu bhayo?
   Did you write to your elder sister
   to-day?
lekhina.

4. tapaalle didilaai kahile chiTThi lekhnubhayo ta ?
maile didilaai ek haptaa aghi chiTThi lekhē.

No, I didn’t.

When did you write to your elder sister?
I wrote to my elder sister one week ago.

Grammar Notes

ma haatle daal bhaat khaanchhu.

I eat rice with my hand.

‘le’ in the above example is used to identify the agent or to mark the instrument with which an action is done.

Other usages of ‘le’-

a) ‘le’ is used with the subject of all transitive verbs as in the following:

1) the simple past tense

maile bhaat khāē.
usle chiTThi lekhyo.
timile kitaab paDhyau.

I ate rice.
He wrote a letter.
You read a book.

2) the first and second participles.

a) maile gareko chhu.
usle khāēko chhaina.
b) usle kitaab pāDhechha.
timile paisaa chorechhau.

I have done.
He has not eaten.
(I noticed it)
You have stolen money.

b) ‘le’ is not used on the subject of intransitive verb--

ma gāē.
u basyo.  
not  not

maile gāē.
usle basyo.
Other usages of ‘le’ will appear in later lessons.

2. ‘laai’ is used to denote the object of a sentence. It should always be used with the object when it is a person or a pronoun.

maile baalaai chiTTThi lekhē. I wrote a letter to my father.
raamle uslaai das rupiyāā diyo. Ram gave him ten rupees.

It should not be used on non-animate objects.

maile kitaab kine not maile kitaab laai kine.
LESSON 20

VOCABULARY

aDhaai two and half kukhuraa chicken
bidaa holiday mandir temple
chiDiyaà khaanaa zoo phul egg
DeDh one and half saaThi sixty
gaarho difficult sajilo easy
jhanDai almost sattari seventy

PART I

(a)

1. tapaal nepaal aae ko kati bhayo? How long ago did you come to Nepal?
   jhanDai ek mahinaa bhayo. It’s been almost a month.
2. nepaalmaa kasari aahunu bhayo ni? How did you come to Nepal?
   hawaai jahaajmaa. I came by plane.
3. kati din laagyo? How many days did it take?
   aDhaai din. Two and a half days.
4. ahile ke gardaihunuhunchha? What are you doing now?
   nepaali sikdai chhu. I’m learning Nepali.
5. nepaali sajilo laagyo ki gaarho? Have you found Nepali easy or difficult?
   sajilo laagyo. I’ve found it easy.

(b)

1. e saahuji ! kukhuraako phul kasari ho? Oh shopkeeper! How much is a
   euTaako tin sukaa. chicken egg?
   Seventy five paisa each.
2. ali mahago bhayo. saaThi paisaamaa dinos, hunchha ? hudaina. That’s a bit expensive. Sell it for sixty paisa, o. k. ?

3. sattari paisaamaa dine ki nadine ? hunchha. linos. katiwaTaa di? O.K. Take it. How many shall I give you ?

4. daswaTaa dinos. ek keji chini pani dinos. hawas. aru kehi chaahinchha ki? O. k. Do you need any thing else ?


**PART II**

(a)

1. hijo tapaa’ kina iskul aaunu bhaena ? hijo bidaa thiyo. Why didn’t you come to school yesterday ?


4. kati baje ghara pharkanubhayo? belukaa chha baje. What time did you go back home? At six in the evening
1. ¿Estabas en casa a las 4 de la tarde ayer?
   — No, no estaba.
2. ¿A las 5 de la tarde?
   — Estaba en casa a las 5.
3. ¿Dónde estabas a las 4 de la tarde?
   — Estaba en casa de Madan. ¿Estaban también en casa sus padres?
   — No, no lo estaban.
4. ¿Estabas en casa de Madan?
   — No, no estaba.

(c)

1. ¿Estabas en Nepal un mes y media atrás?
   — No, no estaba.
2. ¿Dónde estabas entonces?
   — Estaba en Tokio.
3. ¿Dónde estaba Miki?
   — También estaba en Tokio.
4. ¿Fue frío o caliente en Tokio?
   — Fue un poco frío.

(d)

1. ¿Sabes cantar canciones nepalíes?
   — Sí, sé cantar una o dos canciones.
2. kahāā siknubhāyō ? Where did you learn them ?
yahl kaaThmaanDumaa. Here in Kathmandu.
3. tapaai reDiyo nepaal sunnu-
hunchha. Do you listen to Radio Nepal ?
      kahile kahi sunchhu. Sometimes.
4. bi. bi. si. ni ? How about B.B.C. ?
   bi. bi. si. ta dherai jaso sunchhu. I usually listen to B. B. C.

COMPREHENSION

maarkko ghar belaayat ho. u nepaal aaeho jhanDai tin mahinaa bhayo. 
belaayatmaa u euTaa kalejmaa bidyaarthi thiyo. usle dui mahinaa 
kaaThmaanDumaa nepaali sikyo. uslaai nepaali gaarho laagena. 
maark ahile euTaa iskulmaa angreji paDhaaudai chha. usko iskul 
nyaa ho. pohor saal usko iskulmaa dui sae keTaaharu thie. keTi 
euTaa pani thiena. ahile tis janaa keTi ra paune tin sae keTaaharu 
paDhchhan.

QUESTIONS–

1. maarkko ghar kahāā ho ?
2. u nepaal aaeko kati bhayo ?
3. belaayatmaa u ke thiyo ?
4. usle kati mahinaa nepaali sikyo ?
5. marh ahile ke gardaichha ?
6. uslaai nepaali sajilo laagyo ki gaarho ?
7. pohor saal usko iskulmaa kati bidyarthi thie ?
8. heTi ni ?
9. ahile usko iskulmaa jammaa kati bidyarthi paDhchhan ?

92
1. Conjugation. Past Tense of verb 'to be' ‘hunu’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUNS</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>TRANSLATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>thi3</td>
<td>thiina</td>
<td>I was/ wasn’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>thiis</td>
<td>thiinas</td>
<td>you were/weren’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>thiyo</td>
<td>thiena</td>
<td>He was/wasn’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami</td>
<td>thiyaahi</td>
<td>thiyenaai</td>
<td>We were/weren’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi</td>
<td>thiyau</td>
<td>thienau</td>
<td>You were/weren’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>thie</td>
<td>thienan</td>
<td>They were/weren’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaafl</td>
<td>hunuhunthyo</td>
<td>hunuhunnathyo</td>
<td>You were/weren’t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note the following patterns as well:

- aaitabaar bidaa thiyo. Sunday was a holiday.
- aaja bihaana jaaDo thiena. It wasn’t cold this morning.
- sanibaar ma biraami thie. I was ill on Saturday.
- baaTo phohor thiyo. The road was dirty.

2. 'laagnu' is used here as an impersonal verb which requires ‘laai’ on the subject.

- malaai nepaali sajilo laagyo. I found Nepali easy.
- ma’laai nepaali gaarho laagena. I didn’t find Nepali difficult.

3. ‘sauna’ in the following examples means ‘to know how to’ and functions impersonally as ‘laagnu’ i. e. the verb endings do not change.

- malaai nepaali git gaauna aachha. I know how to sing Nepali songs.
- malaai nepaali lekhsa aachha? Do you know how to write Nepali?
- uniharulaai bhaat pakaana aadaina. They do not know how to cook rice.
- haamilaa ta aachha. But we know how to.
- uslaai moTar chalaauna aadaina. He does not know how to drive
4. Units of measurement—

paaisaa— The smallest unit of Nepali currency. There are 100 paisa in a rupee.

amnaa— Four paisa. However, in Terai, 4 anas = 25 paisa, 8 anas = 50 paisa and 16 anas = 1 rupee

raohar— 50 paisa.

5. liū – This form is used to mean ‘May I............. . ‘should I........or’ ‘can I... ...’

ma saathsaga jaaū ?  May I go with my friend?
katiwa Taa phul liaaū ?  How many eggs should I bring ?
ma ek rupiyaa liû ?  Can I take a rupee ?
jaaû  Let’s go.

Also study the following imperative sentences.

timi bholi aau.  Come tomorrow.
 uninharu ek chhin basun.  Let them stay for a while.
 u pani haamisanga aawos.  Let him come with us.
taas nakhela.  Don’t play cards.

The imperative mood.

ma  jaau  May I go ?
tā  jaa, jaanū  you go.
u  jaawos  I let him go.
haami  jaawaū, jaau  I let us go.
timi  jaau, jaanu  you go.
unihar u  jaau  Let them go.
tapaal  jaanu, jaanuos,  you go.

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
LESSON 21

VOCABULARY

aglo  tall  jasto  like
bahaal rent jattikai like (that)
charpi latrine mausam weather
chhiTo fast, early moTo fat
daaro water-tap paani parnu to rain
dhilo slow, late pharak different
dublo thin, slim pariwaar family
ekai same sab bhandaa the most(supra-lative)
garmi hot sae
hocho short (in height) hundred

PART I

1. tapaalko aaphno Deraa chha ki pariwaarmaa basnuhunchha ? Do you have your own apartment or do you live with a family ?
   mero aaphno Deraa chha. I have my own apartment.

2. bahaal kati chha ni ? paune dui sae. How much is the rent ?
   A hundred and seventy-five.

3. koThaa katiwaTaa chhan ? tinwaTaa. duiTaa sutne ko Thaa ra euTaa bhaansaa. How many rooms do you have ?
   Three. Two bedrooms and a ki'chen.

4. charpi chha ki chhaina ? chha, tara raamro chhaina. Do you have a bathroom ?
   Yes, I do. But it’s not a good one.

5. dhaaro ni ? dhaaro pani chha. How about a water tap ?
   There’s a water tap too.
1. माच्छापुङ्छ्रे काति अग्लो च्हा हो?
   माच्छापुङ्छ्रे करिब २३,००० फिट अग्लो च्हा।

2. धाँलागिरी निँ?
   धाँलागिरी करिब २७,००० फिट अग्लो च्हा।

3. कृन पहाड सब्बहान्दा अग्लो च्हा?
   सगरमाथालाई सब्बहान्दा अग्लो च्हा।

4. सगरमाथालाई काता पर्छ हो?
   सगरमाथालाई पुरबमा पर्छ। सगरमाथा एकैले हो।

5. धाँलागिरी निँ?
   धाँलागिरी पश्चिममा पर्छ। धाँलागिरी एकैले हो।

6. माच्छापुङ्छ्रे काहाँनिरा पर्छ?
   माच्छापुङ्छ्रे पोहरानिरा माच्छापुङ्छ्रे हो।

(b)

1. माईक आए बिहाङ्गा काति बजे उठ्यो?
   माईक चाँद बजे उठ्यो।

2. पिता नि?
   पिता साद्हे पाँच बजे उठ्यो।

3. तपाईं काति बजे उठनूबहायो निः?
   माँ च्हा बजे उठेको भए।
4. maaik bhandaa pīTar chhiTo uThyo ki Dhillō ?
   pīTar Dhillō uThyo.
Did Peter get up earlier or later than Mike?
Peter got up later.

5. ko sabbhandaa Dhillō uThyo ?
   ma sabbhandaa Dhillō uThē.
Who got up last?
I got up last.

(c)

1. timro ghar taraaimaa ho ?
   ho.
Are you from the Terai?
Yes.

2. hijo aaja taraaimaa mausam kasto chha ?
   kaaThmaanDumaa bhandaa dherai garmi chha.
What’s the weather like in the Terai these days?
It’s hotter than in Kathmandu.

3. hiūdmaa kasto hunchha ni ?
   hiūdmaa dherai garmi pani hudaina jaaDo pani hudaina.
How about in the winter?
It’s neither very hot nor very cold.

4. hijo aaja taraaimaa paani parchha ?
   dhumdhaam parchha.
Does it rain in the Terai these days?
Yes, it rains a lot.

(d)

1. tapaalko ghaDi mero jasto chha?
   chhaina, pharak chha.
Is your watch like mine?
No, it’s different.

2. mol pani pharak chha ki ?
   mol ta ekai holaa.
Is the price also different?
I think the price is about the same.

3. tapaalko saathiko ghaDi ni ?
   usko haamro bhandaa mahāgo chha.
How about your friend’s watch?
His is more expensive than ours.

4. usko kati rupiyāā paryo ?
   pāāch sae rupiyaa paryo.
How much did his cost?
It was five hundred rupees.
1. yo ko Thaamaa sabbhandaa moTo ko chha?
   Tam chha.
   Who’s the fattest in this room? Tom is.

2. sabbhandaa dublo ko chha ni?
   sabbhandaa dublo jim chha.
   And who is the thinnest? Jim is the thinnest.

3. piTar dublo chha ki moTo chha? Is Peter fat or thin?
   u Tam bhandaa dublo chha,
   tara jim bhandaa moTo chha.
   He is thinner than Tom, but fatter than Jim.

4. tapaalni?
   ma PiTar jattikai chhu.
   How about you? I’m like peter.

Grammar Notes

1. ‘bhandaa’ is used with comparative degree of adjectives and is translated as ‘than’

   raam bhandaa shyaam
   Shyam is taller than
   aglo chha.
   Ram.
   nepaal bhandaa amerikaa
   America is bigger than Nepal.
   Thulo chha.

Note the word order of comparisons in Nepali:

i. e. ‘raam bhaanda’……. ‘while in English the reverse is said,
   i. e.…………than Ram

To avoid confusion, look for the word after ‘than’ in English and say that first followed by ‘bhandaa’

In instances of comparison where ‘than’ is not used in English, Nepali remains the same as in the basic question form of descriptions.

ko thulo chha?
Who is big?
ko Thulo chha?
Who is bigger?

98
2. The word 'jhan' is also used in making comparisons.

usko ghar raamro chha. His house is beautiful.
usko bhaaiko ghar jhan raamro chha. His brother’s house is all the more beautiful.

'sabbhandaa' is the superlative degree of adjectives.

yo kitaab sabbhandaa raamro chha. This is the best book.
yo pasal sabbhandaa mahāgo chha. This is the most expensive store.

Note that sometimes the superlative degree is also formed by doubling the adjectives.

a) miThaa miThha khaane kuraa lyaau. Bring me the most delicious food.
b) usle mahāgaan mahāgaan ghaDi kinyo. He bought the most expensive watches.
**LESSON 22**

**VOCABULARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>banaaunu</td>
<td>to make</td>
<td>khaali</td>
<td>empty, vacant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chalaaunu</td>
<td>to drive</td>
<td>kinmel garnu</td>
<td>to shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disaa garnu</td>
<td>to defecate</td>
<td>nuhaaunu</td>
<td>to bathe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dhunu</td>
<td>to wash</td>
<td>paDhaaunu</td>
<td>to teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ek chhin</td>
<td>a moment</td>
<td>pharkaaunu</td>
<td>to return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kahile kahi</td>
<td>a while</td>
<td>pisaab garnu</td>
<td>to urinate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kamaaunu</td>
<td>sometimes</td>
<td>saalaa-khaalaa</td>
<td>on the average</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to earn.</td>
<td></td>
<td>to make money</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PART I**

1. yo Tyaaaksi khaali ho ?
   khaali ho, tapaal khaa jaane ?
   Is this Taxi empty ?
   Yes, it is. Where would you like to go ?

2. paaTansamma kati linu
   hunchha ?
   miTar chha ni.
   To Patan. How much would you charge ?
   It has a meter in it.

3. tapaalle yo Tyaaaksi chalaaeko
   kati bhayo ?
   jhanDai chaar barsha bhayo.
   How long have you been driving this Taxi ?
   For almost four years.

4. ek dinmaa kati kamaaunu
   hunchha ?
   saalaa-khaalaa pachaas rupiyaa.
   How much do you earn (get) a day ?
   Fifty rupees on the average.
PART II

(a)

1. tapaal bihaana kati baje uThnuhunchha?
   saat baje uThchhu.
   What time do you get up in the morning?
   I get up at seven o’clock.

2. uThera ke garnuhunchha?
   disaa pisaab garchhu ani nuhaauchhu.
   What do you do after getting up?
   I go to the bath room and take a shower.

3. ani ke garnuhunchha?
   chiyaa khaanchhu.
   What do you do then?
   I have tea.

4. chiyaa aaphai banaaunu hunchha?
   hoina, kaam garne maachheccha.
   Do you make tea yourself?
   No, I’ve a worker.

5. uslaai mahinaako kati dinu parchha?
   DeDh saya.
   How much do you have to pay him per month?
   One hundred and fifty rupees.

6. aru ke kaam garchha ra?
   lugaa dhunchha ani koThaa saphaa garchha.
   What else does he do?
   He washes clothes and cleans the room.

(b)

1. aaja bihaana tapaal kati baje uThnubhayo?
   paune saat baje.
   What time did you get up this morning?
   At quarter to seven.

2. uThera ke garnubhayo?
   uThera chiyaa khaae.
   What did you do after getting up?
   After getting up, I had tea.

3. chiyaa khaaepachhi ke garnubhayo?
   chiyaa khaepachhi nepaali paDhe.
   What did you do after having tea?
   After having tea, I studied Nepali.
4. tyaspachhi ke garnubhayo?
   bajaar gae.

5. kina ?
   kinmel garna.

Then what did you do?
I went to the bazaar.

Why?
To do shopping.

(c)

1. timiharu gaaumaa kahile jaanchhau ?
   dui mahinaa pachhi jaanchhau.
   When are you going to go the village ?
   We’re going after two months.

2. gaaumaa gaera ke garchhau ?
   iskulmaa paaDhaauchhau.
   What are you going to do in the village ?
   We’re going to teach at the school.

3. gaaumaa kati baschhau ?
   dui barsha baschhau.
   How long are you going to stay in the village ?
   We’ll stay for two years.

4. gaaumaa dui barsha base-
   pachhi ke garchhau ?
   ghar pharkanchhau.
   After you stay there for two years, what are you going to do ?
   We’ll go back home.

(d)

1. timi aaja diuso ke garchhau ?
   ma ek chhin nepaali paaDhchhu.
   What are you going to do this afternoon ?
   I’m going to study Nepali for a while.

2. nepaali paaDhepachhi ke
garchhau ?
   nepaali paaDhepachhi chiTThi lekhchhu.
   What are you going to do after that ?
   I’m going to write a letter after studying Nepali.

3. kaslaai chiTTi lekhchhau ?
   mero saathilaai.
   Who are you going to write to ?
   To my friend.

102
4. Does your friend write to you?
   lekchha ki lekhdaina ni?
   hahile kahi lekhchha.
   He writes sometimes.

**Comprehension**

hijo maaik khaanaa saanaa khaaera bajaarmaa gayo. usle bajaarbaaTa räägoko maasu, raksi ra aru chijbij kinera lyaayo. belukaa usko Deraamaa uskaa saathiharu aae. uniharule maasu ra raksi khaae. sabailai räägoko maasu man paryo. khaae pachhi uniharule ek chhin gaph gare. raati das baje maaikkäabaaTa saathiharu aaphno Deraamaa gae. uniharu gaepachhi maaik sutyo.

**Questions**

1. maaik khaanaa khaaera kakaa gayo?
2. usle bajaarbaaTa ke ke kinera lyaayo?
3. belukaa usko Deraamaa ko ko aae?
4. uniharule ke ke khaae?
5. uniharulaai räägoko maasu man paryo ki man parena?
6. khaae pachhi uniharule ke gare?
7. maaikkäabaaTa saathiharu kati baje gae?
8. kahäa?
9. uniharu geapachhi maaikle ke garyo?

**Grammar Notes**

ma khaanchhu ra iskul jaanchhu. I eat and go to school.
ma khaanchhu tyaspachhi iskul I eat and then go to school jaanchhu.

The above two sentences are grammatically correct and are used to some extent but the ‘era’ and ‘epachhi’ forms are usually more frequent.

The above two sentences can also be written using ‘era’ and ‘epachhi’.

ma khaaera iskul jaanchhu.
ma khaaepachi iskul jaanchhu.
In general ‘unu’ and ‘nu’ of the verb roots are omitted and ‘era’ or epachhi are added to the end.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Era</th>
<th>Epachhi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>khaanu</td>
<td>khaa era</td>
<td>khaa epachhi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pakaan/unu</td>
<td>pakaan era</td>
<td>pakaan epachhi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>li/nu</td>
<td>li era</td>
<td>li epachhi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sut/nu</td>
<td>sut era</td>
<td>sut epachhi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note, however, that following verbs are irregular as they are in their past tense forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Era</th>
<th>Epachhi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jaanu</td>
<td>gaera</td>
<td>gaepachhi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lagnu</td>
<td>lagera</td>
<td>lagepachhi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>runu</td>
<td>roera</td>
<td>roepachhi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dhunu</td>
<td>dhoera</td>
<td>dhoepachhi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The difference between ‘era’ and ‘epachi’. ‘era’ emphasizes action whereas ‘epachi’ emphasize time.

Study the following examples:

- ma juttaa phukaalera mandir bhitra jaanchhu. I take off my shoes before I go into a temple.
- ghar pugera haat mukh dhoê. After I arrived home, I washed my hands and face.
- haami bhaat khaaepachhi chiyaa khaadainau We don’t drink tea after meals.
- sinemaa herepachhi paaTan gayau. We went to Patan after we watched the movies.

Though ‘era’ and ‘epachhi’ are frequently interchangable, the distinction should be kept in mind.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Epachhi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>u aaepachhi malaai bhêTna</td>
<td>Please tell him to see me when he comes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The ‘era’ form is not correct in the above sentence.
bajaarmaa gaera lyaannos. Please go and get it from the market.

'epachhi' form is not correct here.

In addition to 'epachhi, there is the 'i, form which is also heard.

ma gharmaa gai, lugga pheri aaē. I went home, changed clothes and then came.

bhaat khaai, lugaa dhoi, aaraam gari ani aae. I had my meal, washed my clothes, rested and then came.
LESSON 23

VOCABULARY

ausadhi  medicine         daakTarlaai  to consult with the
dhecTnu   to meet           dekhaaunu     doctor
chinnu    to know, to       kaam            job, work
          recognize        ek paTak      once
DaakTar   doctor           pauDi khelnu   to swim
dekhaaunu to show          sarkaari      official (Govt.)
          Thegaan         certain

PART I

(a)

1. hijo kina aaunu bhaena ?
   kaam thiyo.     Why didn't you come yesterday
   I was busy.
2. ke kaam thiyo ?
   ek janaa saathi bhecTnu parne
   thiyo.          What work did you have ?
   I had to meet a friend of mine
3. bhecT bhayo ta ?
   bhaena.         Did you meet him ?
   No, I didn't.
4. kina ?
   u gharmaa thiena. Why ?
   He was not at home.

(b)

1. uhāalaai chinnuhunchha?
   chindina.       Have you met him ?
   No, I haven't.
2. wahaā si. Di.o. hunuhunchha.
   e, namaskaar.   He is the C.D.O.
   Oh, I see. Hello.

106
PART II

(a)

1. tapaai yurop jaanubhaeko chha ? gaeko chhu. Have you been to Europe ? Yes, I have.

2. kun kun deshmaa jaanu bhaeko chha ? belaayat, frans ra jarmanimaa geako chhu. Which countries have you been to ? I’ve been to Britain, France, and Germany.

3. narwemaa ni ? narwemaa ta gaeko chhaina. How about Norway ? I have’nt been to Norway.

4. swiDenmaa jaanu bhaeko chha ta ? swiDenmaa pani gaeko chhaina. Have you been to Sweden ? No, I haven’t been to Sweden either:

(b)

1. tapaalko saathi kahaa chha ? sinemaa herna gaeko chha. Where is your friend ? He has gone to the movies.

2. usaga ko ko gaekaa chhan ? usaga jim ra Tam gaekaa chhan. Who has gone with him ? Jim and Tom have gone with him.

3. bil gaeko chhaina ? ah, gaeko chhaina. Hasn’t Bill gone ? No, he hasn’t.
4. u kahā gaeko chha ta ?
ghumna gaeko chha.
Where has he gone ?
He’s gone for a walk.

1. bhaansaa garnubhayo ?
aha, khaaeko chhaina.
Did you eat ?
No, I haven’t.

2. kina ta ? eghaara bajai sakyo.
pēT dukheko chha.
Why ? It’s already eleven o’clock.
I’ve some stomach trouble.

3. dishaa pani laaageko chha ?
laaageko chha.
Do you have diarrhoea too ?
Yes, I have.

4. ausadhi khaanubhayo ta ?
khaaeko chhaina.
Did you take any medicine ?
No, I haven’t

1. timile Tamko Deraa dekhekaa
chhau ?
dekheko chhu.
Do you know where Tom lives ?
Yes, I do.

2. ek pāTak usko Deraamaa
jauna. mero kaam chha.
aaja bhōli yahā chhaina.
pokharaa gaeko chha.
Let’s go to his apartment once
I’ve some business with him.
He’s not here these days.
He’s gone to Pokhara.

3. kahile aauuchha ta ?
Theegaan chhaina.
When will be he back ?
It’s not certain.

4. sarkaari kaammaa gaeko ho ki
kyaa ho ?
hoina, bidaamaa.
Has he gone there on official
business ?
No, he’s on vacation.

Comprehension——

das baji sakyo tara raam ahilesamma uTheko chhaina. aaja
shanibaar ho tyaskaaran uslaai iskul jaanu pardaina. usko bhaai

QUESTIONS —

1. raam uThyo ?
2. aaja uslaai kina isku! jaanu pardaina ?
3. usko bhaai uThera kahaa gayo ?
4. kina ?
5. ko säga ?
6. u kati ghanTaa pauDi khelera ghara pharkyo ?
7. ghurmaa aera usle aamaasäga ke sodhyo ?
8. aamaale ke bhannubhayo ?

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Conjugation of Present Perfect Tense

a) With Intransitive Verb (Those which don’t take objects)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>gaeko chhu</td>
<td>gaeko chhaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>gaeko chhas</td>
<td>gaeko chhinas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>gaeko chha</td>
<td>gaeko chhina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami</td>
<td>gaekaa chhau</td>
<td>gaekaa chhinau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi</td>
<td>gaekaa chhau</td>
<td>gaekaa chhinau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>gaekaa chhan</td>
<td>gaekaa chhinan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaal</td>
<td>gaanu bhaeho chha</td>
<td>jaanu bhaeko chhaina</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
b) With TRANSITIVE VERB (those which take objects)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>maile</th>
<th>khaae ko chhu</th>
<th>khaae ho chhaina</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>taille</td>
<td>khaae ko chhas</td>
<td>khaae ko chhainas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usle</td>
<td>khaae ko chha</td>
<td>khaae ko chhaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haamile</td>
<td>khaaekaa chhau</td>
<td>khaaekaa chaaianau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timile</td>
<td>khaaekaa chhau</td>
<td>khaaekaa chhainau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharule</td>
<td>khaaehaa chhan</td>
<td>khaaekaa chhainan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaalle</td>
<td>khaanu bhaeho chha</td>
<td>khaanu bhaeko chhaina</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. USAGES OF PRESENT PERFECT TENSE—

a) To describe Past activities without any time reference

ma pokharaa gaeko chhu. I've been to Pokhara.
maile french khaanaa khaaeko chhu. I've eaten French food.
maile sekspi yarko kitaab paDheko chhu. I've read Shakspeare.
usle malaai maddat gareko chha. He's helped me.

b) To describe the activities that are related up until the present tense.

maile kahile pani raksi khaaeko chhaina. I've never drunk raksi.
kamalaa aae ko chhaina. Kamala hasn't come.
maile jimlaai bbeTeho chhaina. I've not met Jim.
maile ajhasam ma kaam sakeko chhaina. I haven't finished my work yet.

c) Frequently to describe an activity which has some present relevance.

baa jillaa panchhaayatamaa jaanubhaeko chha. Father has gone to the District Panchayat office.

110
mero daai aaunu bhaeko chha. My elder brother has come.
ma aaja raatbhari suteko chhaina. I haven't slept all night.
malaai sancho chhaina. I'm not feeling well.
uste raksi khaaeko chha. He has drunk raksi (He is drunk).

d) There are also a few verbs in Nepali using this form when the actual tense coincides with the English Present Progressive.

tyo keTile raato lugaa lagaaeko chha. That girl is wearing a red dress.
ghaam laageko chha. The sun is shining.
paani pareko chha. It's raining.

e) Note also the following:

maile uslaai chineko chhu. I know him.
ma uslaai chinchhu. I know him.
maile kehi gareko chhaina. I haven't done anything.
maile uslaai kehi gareko chhaina. I haven't done anything to him.

3. Si. Di. O/ Chief District Officer
LESSON 24

VOCABULARY

chaDhnu  to climb  khub   very
chhuTTi  vacation, holiday  majaa    fun
Dar laagnu  to be afraid  nikaai    very (emphatic)
ghumnu  to wander, to ramble  pohor (saal) last year
haraaunnu  to lose  prasiddha  famous
jukaa  leech, worm  samudra  sea
kinaar  beach, bank  sangraahaalaya  museum
sundar  beautiful

(a)

1. yo reDiyo tapaal inha kahaa kinnubhayo ?  Where did you buy this radio ?
   hangkangmaa.  In Hongkong.

2. kahile kinnubhayo ?  When did you buy it ?
   amerikaa baaTa nepaalmaa aaOdaakheri.  I bought it while I was coming to Nepal from the States.

3. amerikaa baaTa nepaalmaa aaOdaakheri byaangkak maa pani basnubhayo ?
   base.  Did you stay in Bangkok also on your way to Nepal ?

4. byaangkak kasto rahcechha ta ?  How did you find Bangkok ?
   raamro rahechha.  It’s nice.

(b)

1. pohor saal tapaal jomsom jaanubhayo, hoina ?  You went to Jomsom last year.
   gaë.  didn’t you ?

   Yes, I did.

112

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
2. kasari jaanubhayo?
   jāādaa hawāi jahaajmaa ani
   aaūdāa hīDera.

3. baaTo kasto rahechha?
   baaTo ta raamro rahechha tara
   paani pardaakheri jukaa laagdo
   rahechha.

4. jaana aauna jammaa kati din
   laagyo?
   dash din.

   How did you go?
   I went by plane and on the way
   back I walked.

   How did you like the trail?
   The trail is nice but when it rains
   there are a lot of leeches.

   How many days did you spend
   altogether?
   Ten days.

(c)

1. timi perismaa gaekaa chhau?
   gaeko chhu.

2. tyahāā kati din basyau?
   dash-baarha din basē.

3. tyahāā basdaakheri ke ke
   garyau?
   sangrahaalayaharu here,
   aaiphel Taawar maathi chāDhē
   ra sahar ghume.

4. aaiphel Taawarmaathī chāDh-
   daakheri Dar laagena?
   laagena.

   Have you been to Paris?
   Yes, I have.

   How long did you stay there?
   I stayed there for ten or twelve days.

   What did you do while you were
   there?
   I went to many museums, climbed
   up to the Eiffel Tower and wande-
   red around the city.

   Weren't you scared while climbing
   up the Eiffel Tower?
   No, I wasn't.

(d)

1. yespaali dasaiko chuTTi
   hūdda timi kahaā gayau?
   ma sri lankaamaa gaē.

2. sri lankaa kasto rahechha?
   nikkai ramaailo rahechha.

   Where did you go for the Dasain
   vacation this year?
   I went to Sri Lanka.

   How did you like Sri Lanka?
   I found it very pleasant.
3. sri lankaa keko laagi prasiddha rahechha ?
   samudrako sundar kinaar haruko laag.

4. tyahaa basdaakheri tapaalle pauDi khelnubhayo ?
   ho khelê. khub majaa bhayo.

   What is Sri Lanka famous for ?
   For its beautiful beaches.
   Did you go swimming while you were there ?
   Yes, I did. It was great !

(e)

1. aaja mero jholaa haraayo.
   kahaa haraaunu bhayo ?

2. bajaarbaaTa churoT kinera pharkādaa haraayo.

   paisaa pani thiyo ?
3. tin sae rupiyaa jati thiyo.
   aru ke ke thiyo ni ?
4. euTaa khukuri ra duiTaa kitaab. A khukuri and two books.
   yo sunera dherai dukha laagyo.

   I lost my bag to-day.
   Where did you lose it ?
   I lost it while I was coming back from the bazaar after I bought some cigarettes.
   Did you have any money in it !
   Yes, there was about three hundred rupees.
   What else was there ?
   I'm really sorry to hear that.

   I lost my bag to-day.
   Where did you lose it ?
   I lost it while I was coming back from the bazaar after I bought some cigarettes.
   Did you have any money in it !
   Yes, there was about three hundred rupees.
   What else was there ?
   I'm really sorry to hear that.

   I lost my bag to-day.
   Where did you lose it ?
   I lost it while I was coming back from the bazaar after I bought some cigarettes.
   Did you have any money in it !
   Yes, there was about three hundred rupees.
   What else was there ?
   I'm really sorry to hear that.

**Grammar Notes**

1. ‘..........daa. as in ‘jāādaa. ‘pugdaa’ is one of the imperfect participles implying ‘while or when doing something ! In spoken Nepali, the word ‘.. ..kheri. is also used frequently giving the same meaning.

   Study the following examples.

   a) sinemaa herdaakheri mero āākhaa dukhyo
   While I was watching the movie, my eyes hurt.

   b) kaam gardaakheri thakaai laagyo.
   I got tired while I was working.
c) bhukundo khelindaakeheri usko khuTTaa bhaachchiyo. He broke his legs when he was playing foot-baal.
d) baaTomaa hiDdaa maile uslaai bheTe. I met him when I was walking along the road.

Note that this form indicates a concurrent action sequence, i.e. one action occurring while another action is going on.

1. The negative of this 'while when doing' form can be used and interpreted like the following--

a) paisaa nahudaa usle ghaDi kinena. He didn’t buy the watch because he didn’t have money.
b) bhaneko namaandaa usle dukha paayo. He suffered because he didn’t listen (to us).
c) ausadhi naaKhadaa rogi marya. The patient died because he didn’t take the medicine.

Compare the last sentence with the following.

ausadhi naaKhadaai rogi marya. The patient died before he took the medicine.

Note: The form of this participle (as other imperfect participles) remains the same whatever the person, number or gender of the subject.

3. ‘rahechha’—generally implies that the fact stated in the sentence has been recently discovered by the speaker.

kaThmanDu phohor rahechha. I found Kathmandu dirty.

The fact that ‘Kathmandu is dirty has just become known to the speaker. The negative form is ‘rahenachha’

paani pardaakheri jukaa laagdo rahechha. There are a lot of leeches when it rains (I have just found out that........)
nepaali sikna gaarho rehenachha.  I found out that it's not difficult to learn Nepali.

minaale Tibeti boldo rahenchha.
Meena does not speak Tibetan.
(I just found out that......)

bhairahawaa ramaailo rehenachha.
Bhairahawa isn't pleasant (I just discovered that......)
Lesson 25

Vocabulary

bhoj  | feast  | maannu  | to follow
bokaa | he goat | pahilo   | first
chhaarlangai | festival | pandhraau | fifteenth
dekhu | to be seen | puja  | worship
odashaI | Durga puja Festival Tikaa | sunini | to be heard
dharma | religion | Thulaa | red mark worn
Durgaaa | the goddess who Thulaa killed the buffalo | usobhae | on the forehead
kaaTnu | to cut |                | superiors
kinabhane | because |                | if so, in that
maanchhe | man |                | case

Part I

1. kati bajyo ?
   baara bajna laagyo.  | What time is it ?
   It's almost twelve.
2. aaja kahaa khaana jaane
   bichaar chha ?
   'uniTi' maa jaawa na. | Where were you thinking of eating to day ?
   Let's go to the Unity.
3. 'uniTi' kahaa nira parchha ?
   niu roDmaa ta ho ni. | Where is the Unity ?
   It's on New Road.
4. khaanaa kasto paainchha ni ?
   miTho paainchha. paani pani
   umaaleko dinchha. | What kind of food can you get there ?
   Good food and they
   also serve boiled water.
5. usobhae tyahl jaawa.
   jaawa. | Let's go there, then.
   Let's go.
PART II

1. nepaalmaa b.b.c. reDio suninchha ?
   suninchha. belaayatmaa reDio nepaal suninchchha ?
2. sunidaina. tapaal b.b.c. sunnuhunchha ?
   kahile kahi sunchhu.
3. dheraijaso ke sunnuhunchha?
   dheraijaso reDio nepaal nai sunchhu.
4. masko reDio ni ?
   masko reDio kahilepani sundina.
5. kina ?
   kinabhane ma rusi bhaashaa bujhdina.

Can you get the BBC in Nepal ?
(lit. Is the BBC heard in Nepal ?)
Yes, you can. Can you get Radio Nepal in England ?
No you can't. Do you listen to the B.B.C. ?
Yes, I do sometimes.
What do you listen to most of the time ?
I listen to Radio Nepal most of the time.
How about Radio Moscow ?
No, I never listen to that.
Why ?
Because I don’t understand Russian

(b)

1. timro DeraabaaTa himaal raamrosanga dekhinchha ?
   ahā, raamrosanga dekhidaina.
   timro gharbaaTa ni ?
   Can you see the Himalayas well from your apartment ?
   No I can’t see them well.
   How about from your house ?
   I can see them very clearly from my house.
2. mero ghar baaTa ta chharlangai dekhinchha.
   kun kun himaal dekhinchhan ?
3. ganesh ra laamTaang dekhinchhan.
   sagarmaatha ni ?
4. sagarmaatha ta dekhidaina.
   Which peaks can you see ?
   Ganesh and Lamtang.
   How about Everest ?
   No, I can’t see Everest.

118
1. nepaalmaa kun kun dharma maaninchaa ?
   hindu ra buddha dharma maaninchha.
What religions are followed in Nepal ?
Hinduism and Buddhism.

2. aru dharma maanidaina ?
   maaninchha, tara dherai thorai maatra.
Aren’t there any other religions followed ?
Yes, but not much.

3. sabbhandaa dherai kun chaani maaninchha ?
   hindu dharma sab bhandaa dherai Hinduism is followed the most.
Which one is followed the most ?
maaninchha.

4. tapaal kun dharma maannu hunchha ni ?
   ma hindu dharma maanchhu.
What’s your religion ?
I’m a Hindu.

Comprehension—

dashaI hinduharuko sab bhandaa Thulo chaAD ho. yo chaAD akTobar mahinaamaa prachha. yeslaai pandara dinsamma manaainchha. pahilo dindekhi pandharaI dinsamma nai durgaako pujaas garinchha ra dherai bokaa kaATinchhan. Tikaa dashaIko sabbhandaa Thulo din ho. yes dinmaa aphubhandaa Thulaa maanchhe baaTa Tikaa lagaainchha. yes chaAD bhari nai hinduharu bhoj khaanchhan.

Questions:—

1. hinduharuko sab bhandaa Thulo chaAD kun ho ?
2. yo kun mahinnamaa parchha ?
3. yo chaAD kati din samma manaainchha ?
4. yes belaamaa kun debiko pujaas garinchha ?
5. kati dinsamma?
6. yes belaamaa ke kaaTinchha?
7. dashalko sabbhandaa Thulo din kun ho?
8. yes dinmaa ke lagaainchha?
9. kasbaat?
10. yo chhaD bhari hinduharu ke garchhan?

Grammar Notes

1. ‘bajna laagnn.- Its a compound verb formed from two roots ‘bajou, and ‘laagon.
   
   baarha bajna laagyo.  It’s almost 12 o’clock.
   u jaana laagyo.  He is about to go.
   jahaaj uDna laagyo.  The plane is about to take-off.
   garmi huna laagyo.  The hot season is coming.

2. ‘parchha’ is used here to specify the time of an event.

   yo chaD akToobar mahinaamaa parchha.  This festival falls in the month of October.

   Study the following examples:

   a) yo kitaabko dash rupiyaa parchha.  This book costs ten rupees.
   b) ilaam purbamaa parchha.  Ilam lies in the east.
   c) yahaa dherai paani parchha.  It rains a lot here.
   d) rughaa laagdaa aaspirin kaaanu parchha.  You should take aspirin when you have cold.

3. pahilo, pandhrau are ordinal numbers.

   study the following—

   pahilo  first teshro  third
   doshro  second chautho  fourth

120
paachāū: fifth
chhaiTaū: sixth
saataū: seventh
aaThaū: eighth
nawāū: ninth
dasaaā: tenth
eghaaraū: eleventh
baaraū: twelfth

4. (a) ‘suninchha., ‘dekhinchha. are impersonal forms of the personal verb ‘sunnu. ‘dekh-

nu’. These verb forms can best be translated by an English passive.

yahāābaaTa pokaraa dekhinchha.
Pokara is seen from here.
dinko aaTh ghanTaa kaam
garinchha.
Eight hours of work is done
every day.

b) Some transitive verbs and their impersonal forms—

sunnu– to hear
maannu to celebrate
garnu– to do
paDhaanu– to teach
dekhaaunu– to show
dinu– to give

suninchha– is heard.
maaninchha– is celebrated.
garinchha is done.
paDhaainchha– is taught
dekhaainchha– is shown
diinchha is given

Note suffix ‘i’ is added in all the impersonal forms in the above examples.
LESSON 126

VOCABULARY

bigyaan science parsi day after tommorrow
gaai cow phursad free time
khasi castrated male goat siddhinu to be finished
krishi agriculture

PART I

1. bhannos. malaai TikaT chaahiyo. Yes, please. I need a ticket.
2. kahileko lagi ni ? bholiko laagi. For when ? For tomorrow.
4. bholiko TikaT ta siddhiyo. All tickets for tomorrow
   usobhae parsikolaagi dions. have been sold (lit. are finished)
   In that case, give me one for the
day after tomorrow.
5. ek chhin parkhanos, hai. hawas. Please wait a minute, okay ?
   Okay.

PART II

(a)

1. ·amerikaa hudaatapai ke What did you use to do ?
   garnuhunthyo ? I uded to go to college.
   kalejmaa parDhthe.
2. ke parDhnuhunthyo ? What did you (used to) study ?
   bigyaan parDhthe. I studied science.

122
3. nepali pani paDhnuhunthyo kì ?
   paDhdinathē.

4. kalejmaa paDhdāa sinemaa pani hernhunthyo ?
   hahile kahī herthē.

Did you use to study Nepali also?
No, I didn’t.

Did you use to go to movies while you were in college?
I used to go sometimes.

(b)

1. amerikaamaa tapaal keko maasu khaanuhunthyo ?
   gaaiko maasu khaanthē.

2. khasiko maasu pani khaanuhunthyo’ ?
   khaannathē.

3. kina ni ?
   amerikaamaa khasiko maasu paaldaina.

4. wahāā amerikaamaa keko maasu khaanuhunthyo ?
   gaaikē maasu khaanuhunthyo.

(b) Did you (use to) eat goat meat also?
No, I didn’t.

Why not?
Goat meat isn’t available in the States.

What meat did ne use to eat in the States?
He used to eat beef.

(c)

1. dui mahinaa aghi timi kahāā thiyau ?
   ma jaapaanmaa thīē.

Where were you two months ago?
I was in Japan.

2. jaapaanmaa ke garthiyau ?
   ma paDhthē.

What did you (use to) do in Japan?
I used to study.
3. ke paDhtheu ?
krishi paDhthē.

What did you (use to) study ?
I used to study agriculture.

4. u ke paDhthyo ?
u krishi paDhthyo.

What did he (use to) study ?
He used to study agriculture.

COMPREHENSION—

jimko ghar amerikaako kyaaliphorniyaa raajyamaa parchha. u nepaal aeko due mahinaa pani bhaeko chhaina tara u raamrai nepaali bolchha. amerikaamaa hūdaa u kalejmaa paDhthyo. amerikaamaa u khasiko maasu khaadainathyo kinabhane tyahāa khasiko maasu paaidaina. kalejmaa paDhdāa jim kahile kāhi bhali bal ra ping pang khelthyo tara phuTbal khelainathyo kinabhane uslaai phuTbal khelna man pardaina. yahāa aaepachhi usle kunaipani khel kheleko chhaina. uslaai khelne phursad pāni hudaina. uslaai dinko chaar ghanTaa nepaali siknu parchaa ani aru pani kaam garnu parchha.

QUESTIONS—

1. jimko ghar kun raajyamaa parchha ?
2. u nepaali aeko due mahinaa bhayo ?
3. u nepaali kasto bolchha ?
4. amerikaamaa u ke garthyo ?
5. u khasiko maasu khaanthyo ?
6. kina ?
7. u kun kun khel khelthyo ?
8. phuTbal nī ?
9. yahāa aaepachhi usle kun khel kheleko chha ?
10. kina ?
11. uslaai dinko kati ghanTaa nepaali siknu parchha ?
12. uslaai aru pani kaam garnu parchha ?

124

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
1. 'bhanos' literally 'say' is sometimes used to ask people what they want. It can be roughly translated as 'what do you want?' or May I help you?

2. Conjugation of Past Habitual - khaanu- to eat

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUNS</th>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>ALTERNATIVE NEG</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>khaanthē</td>
<td>khaannathē</td>
<td>khaadinathē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>khaanthis</td>
<td>khaannathis</td>
<td>khaadinathis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>khaanthyo</td>
<td>khaannathyo</td>
<td>khaadainathyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami</td>
<td>khaanthyaū</td>
<td>khaannathyaū</td>
<td>khaadainathyaū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi</td>
<td>khaanthēu</td>
<td>khaannatēu</td>
<td>khaadainatēu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharū</td>
<td>khaanthe</td>
<td>khaannathe</td>
<td>khaadainathe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaal</td>
<td>khaanuhunthyo</td>
<td>khaanuhunnathyo</td>
<td>khaanuhudainathyo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. The 'thē' form is used to express a repetitive or habitual activity in the past. It's usually used with the adverbs denoting frequency such as 'always' 'usually' in the morning's etc. and with the "daakhirē" form

   ma britenmaa basdāa sadhai sup khanthē. I always used to have soup when
   aaitabaar charchmaa jaanthē. I was in Britain.
   beluki beluki ghumna jaanthē. I used to go to church on Sundays.
   I used to go for a walk in the evenings.

4. 'ai' as in 'ramrai' added to the adjective diminishes the quality of the adjective. so
   'raamrai' converts 'raamro' into meaning 'fairly good'

   Thik ---- Thikai
   sancho ---- sanchai
   Thulo ---- Thulai

125
LESSON 27

VOCABULARY

badhi more lugaa cloth, clothes, dress
baliyo strong maddhye among, between
bataaunu to tell, narrate nyaano warm
bidyaartheta student pugnu to arrive, to suffice
bishaya subject roknu to stop
itihaas history Thik right, exact
jor pair Thaaũ place

PART I

1. e daai! pokharaa jaane basko Hello! (lit. Hey, brother) where
   TikaT kahaa paainchha ? can I get a ticket for the bus to
   yahî paainchha. Pokhara ?
   You can get them here.

2. malaai bholiko laagi duiTaa Please give me two tickets for
   TikaT dinos ta. tomorrow.
   kati bajeko basm aa jaane tapaai? Which bus do you want to take ?

3. pahilo bas kati baje jaancha ? What time does the first bus leave ?
   Thik saat baje.

4. pokharaa kati baje pugchha ni ? What time does it arrive in
   tin bajetiraa. Pokhara ?
   Around three o'clock.

5. baaTomaa rokchha ki rokdaina? Does it stop on the way or not ?
   ek dui Thaaũmmaa rokchha. It stops at one or two places.

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
**PART II**

(a)

1. kaapimaa tapaalko naam leknons. tapaalle kasko naam lekhnu bhayō ?
   maile mero naam lekhe.

2. aba mero naam lehnhos. tapaalle kasko naam lekhnu bhayō ?
   maile tapaalko naam lekhē.

3. mero naam lekhnubhandaa pahile tapaalle kasko naam lekhnubhayo ?
   tapaalko naam lekhnubhandaa pahile maile mero naam lekhe.

4. mero naam lekhnubhandaa pahile wahaale kasko naam lekhnubhayo ?
   tapaalko naam lekhnubhandaa pahile wahaale aaphno naam lekhnubhayo

   Please write your name in your notebook. Whose name did you write ?
   I wrote my name.

   Now write my name.
   Whose name did you write ?
   I wrote your name.

   Whose name did you write before writing my name ?
   I wrote my name before writing your name.

   Whose name did he write before writing my name ?
   He wrote his name before writing yours.

(b)

1. nepaal aaunu bhandaa pahile timi kahaa thiyau ?
   amerikaamaa thīē.

2. amerikaamaa ke gartheu ?
   paDhthē.

3. kun bishaya paDhtheu ?
   dharma ra itihaas.

   Where were you before coming to Nepal ?
   I was in the States.

   What did you use to do in the States ?
   I used to study.

   What subject did you (use to) study ?
   Religion and history.
4. dhæma ra itihaas maddhye Of the two subjects, which do you
timilaai kun bishaya baDhi man like better ?
parchha ?
malaai dhæma baDhi man I like religion better.
parchha.

COMPREHENSION—

nepaal aaunu bhandaa pahile ma iskaTlyaanDmaa thië. tyahāa
ma euTaa kalejmaa paDhtē. ek din maile euTaa nepaali bidyarthilaii
bheTē. usle malaai nepaalko baremaa bataayo. usko kuraan sunera
malaai nepaalmaa aauna man laagyo. iskaTlyaanDmaa pani pahaaD-
haru chhan. tara nepaalkaa jati aglaa chaainan. iskaTlyaanDmaa
hūdāa pani ma bidaamaa pahaaD chaDhtē. nepaalbaaTa pharkanu
bhandaa pahile euTaa pahaaD chaDhne bichaar chha. pahaaD cha-
Dhnako laagi baliyo juttaa ra nyaano lugaa chaahinchha. tyasāile
maile ek jor baliyo buT ra nyaano lugaa lyaaeko chhu. iskaTlyaanDmaa
dherai jaso hiu parchha. hiu pardaa ma sadhai mero buT lagaauthē.
kaaThmaanDumaa bhane ma aapachhi ek paTak pani hiu pareko
chhaina.

QUESTIONS—

1. nepaal aaunubhandaa pahile tapaai kahāa hunuhunthyo ?
2. tyahāa tapaai ke garnu hunthyo ?
3. ek din tapaalle kaslaai bheTnubhayo ?
4. usle tapaallaai keko baremaa bataayo ?
5. usko kuraa sunera tapaallaai ke garna man laagyo ?
6. iskaTlyaanDmaa pahaaDharu chhan ki chhainan ?
7. ti pahaaDharu nepaalkaa jati aglaa chhan ?
8. iskaTlyaanDmaa hūdāa pani tapaai pahaaD chaDhunuhunthyo ?
9. nepaalbaatā pharkanubhandaa pahile tapaāiko ke garne bīchaar chha?
10. pahaaD chaDhnako laagi ke ke chhahinchha?
11. tapaalle ke ke lyaaunu bhaeko chha?
12. iskaTlyaanDmaa hiūdmaa kattiko hiū parchha?
13. hiū pardaa tapaai ke lagaunuhunthyo?
14. tapaai aaepahhi kaThmaanDumaa hiū pareko chha ki chhaina?
LESSON 28

VOCABULARY

baaremaa  about  tyati belaa  at that time
bhaaDaa  fare, rent  yasko  it’s, of this
tyas din  that day

PART I

1. hijo diūsō tapaal gharmaa hunuhunnathyo ni. kahāā jaanubhāeko thiyo ?
kati baje ? tapaā mero gharmaa aaunubhāeko thiyo ra ?
You weren’t at your house yesterday afternoon. Where had you gone ? At what time ? Did you come to my place ?

2. ho, ma chaar baje tapaaï ko gharmaa gaeko thiē.
e ! ma tyati belaa sinemaa herna gaeko thiē.
Yes, I was there at 4 p. m. Oh ! I was at the movies then.

3. kun sinemaa herna jaanubhāeko thiyo ?
‘War and Peace’ herna gaeko thiē... Which movie had you gone to ? I had gone to see ‘War and Peace’...

4. sinemaa kati baje siddhiyo ?
chha baje siddhiyo .
When was the movie over ? At six.

5. tapaal ghar pugdaa kati bajeko thiyo ?
ghar pugdaa saat bajeko thiyo.
What time was it when you arrived home ? It was seven when I got home.

PART II

(a)

1. tapaaï haru asti kahāā jaanubhāeko thiyo ?
haami pokhāraa gaekaa thiyaā. Where had you gone the day before yesterday ? We had gone to Pokhara.
2. tapaalharu pokharaamaa hidaa maachhaapuchhre dekhieko thiyo ?
   aha dekhieko thiena.

3. kina ?
   tyas din dherai baaklo baadal laageko thiyo.

4. paani pani pareko thiyo ?
   paani ta pareko thiena.

   Was Machapuchhre out while you were in Pokhara ?
   No, it wasn’t.

   Why ?
   It was thickly clouded that day.

   Was it also raining ?
   No, it wasn’t.

(b)

1. yahaa aunnubhandaa pahile nepaalko baaremaa sunekaa thiyau ?
   ali ali suneko thie.

2. nepaalko baaremaa kunai kitaab paDhekaathiyyau ?
   euTaa maattra paDheko thie.

3. kun kitaab paDhekaa thiyau ?
   Toni heganko ‘Nepal’ paDheko thie.

4. bisTako ‘People of Nepal’ paDhekaa thienau ?
   aha ! tyo ta paDheko thiiina.

5. mero bichaarmaa timile tyo kitaab paDhnu parchha.
   hunchha, paDchhu.

   Had you heard about Nepal before you came here ?
   Yes, I had heard about it a little.

   Had you read any books on Nepal ?
   Yes, I had read one.

   Which one ?
   Toni Hagen’s ‘Nepal’.

   Handn’t you read Bista’s ‘People of Nepal’ ?
   No, I had not.

   I’d recommend you to read the book.
   O. K. I’ll read it.

COMPREHENSION

   gaeho haptaa ma pokharaa gaeko thie. raam ra shyaam pani ma sanga gaekaa thie. kaaThmanDubaaTa pokharaasamma basko bhaaDaa

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
pachchis rupiyāā rahechha. baaTo raamro rahechha. malaai pokharaa asaadhyai ramaailo laagyo. ma pahile pokharaa kahilepani gaeko thiinā tara yasko baaremaa suneko thiē. kaaThmandDubaaTa pokharaa jhanDai chha ghanTaa laagdo rahechha.

QUESTIONS

1. gaeko haptaa tapaal kahāā kahāā jaanu bhaeko thiyo ?
2. tapaalsanga ko ko gaekaa thie ?
3. tyahāāsamma basko bhaaDaa kati rahechha ?
4. baaTo kasto rahechha ?
5. tapaallaai pokharaa kasto laagyo ?
6. tapaal pahile pani pokharaa jaanubhaeko thiyo ?
7. pokharaako baaremaa sunubhaeko thiyo ta ?
8. pokharaa pugna kati ghanTaa laagdo rahechha ?

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Conjugation of the Past perfect tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUNS</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>gaeko thiē</td>
<td>gaeko thiina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>gaeko thiis</td>
<td>gaeko thiinas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>gaeko thiyō</td>
<td>gaeko thiena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami</td>
<td>gaekaa thiāū</td>
<td>gaekaa thienāū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi</td>
<td>gaekaa thiayu</td>
<td>gaekaa thienau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>gaekaa thie</td>
<td>gaekaa thienan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaaf</td>
<td>jaanu bhaeko thiyo</td>
<td>jaanu bhaeko thienan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note the ‘kaa’ form with plural pronouns timi, haami and uniharu. In spoken Nepali, however, this distinction is not always made.

2. a.) The ‘eko thiyo’ form is very common with the form ‘hunubhandaa pahile’.

maile nepaal aaunu bhandaa pahile nepaali sikeko thiina. Before coming to Nepal, I hadn’t learned Nepali.
ii. kaaThmaanDu aaunubhandaa pahile usle moTar dekheko thiena.

Before coming to Kathmandu, he had never seen a car.

iii. Dhokaa laaunu bhandaa pahile maile sāacho lieko thie.

Before locking the door, I had taken the key.

iv. aphis baaTa niskanu bhandaa pahile batti nibhaaeko thiē.

Before leaving the office, I had turned off the light.

b. This form is often used in a situation when you want to say something in a kind of report or when you want to recall yours or someone’s past life.

baale malaai yahi iskulmaa paDhna bhannu bhaeko thiyo.

My father had told me to study in this school.

maile haai iskulmaa aliali sanskrit paDheko thiē.

I had studied a little Sanskrit in high school.

u 1950 maa janmeko thiyo.

He was born in 1950.

wahāa paakistaan pani jaanu bhaeko thiyo.

He had also been to Pakistan.

c. This form is also commonly used with a verb daa (kheri) form:

ma asti aaudaa timi utekaa thiyau.

When I came over to your house the day before yesterday you were sleeping.

raam aaudaa kohi pani uTheko thiena.

When Ram came over, nobody was up.

gopaalkāa jāādaa usko bahiri Dhokaamāa ubhieki thii.

When we got over to Gopal’s his sister was standing in the door way.

d. This form is also used to describe an activity of past relevance.

a) taapaa! hijo aaunu bhayo?

Did you come over yesterday?

aaina.

No, I didn’t.

kina?

Why?
Taauko dukheko thiyo. I had a headache.
b) jim nidaeko thiena. Jim wasn’t asleep.
c) phalphul kuheko thiyo. The fruit was rotten.
d) hijo baadal laageko thiyo. It was cloudy yesterday.

This ‘eko thiyo’ form as described above can be used in a variety of situations not necessarily always coinciding with the English Past Perfect Tenses. Further study of the text and exposure to Nepali in conversation should reinforce the proper usage of this form.

3. Usage of rahechha, rahenachha. (also see lesson 24–Notes 3)

a) Noun rahechha

miThaai rahechha—Hey, its a piece of candy.

b) Noun Location rahechha

mero bhaai iskulmaa rahechha. Hey, my brother is still in school.

1. verb rahenachha

paaine rahenachha. Hey, it’e not available.
yahaa biyar paaine rahenachha. Hey, you can get beer here.

Note: ‘rahechha’ and ‘rahenachha’ are often contracted to ‘raicha, and rainachha’ Study the following examples–

usko tinwaTaa chhoraa rahechhan. I found that he has three sons.
tarakaari piro rahechha. Oh! the curry is hot.
raagoko maasu miTho hune rahenachha. Buffalo meat is tasty (I just found out).
mero kalam jholaamaa rahechha I found that my pen was in my bag.
mero saathi pani aaeko rahechha. My friend has also come.
This structure is quite frequent in Nepali. It is used when the speaker suddenly becomes aware of something or has found out something he didn’t know before. Compare—‘rahechha’ with ‘hunchha’—

**kaaThmanDumaa aalu sasto hunchha.**  
Potato is cheap in Kathmandu. (always so, compared to other places)

**kaaThmanDumaa aalu sasto rahechha.**  
I see that potatoes are cheap in Kathmandu. (It is a recent discovery for the speaker)
LESSON 29

VOCABULARY

bechnu  to sell  kattiko  how much
bekaar  jobless, useless  khojnu  to look for
bhid  crowd  kisim  kind, type, sort
bideshi  foreigner  kohi  some
dikkalaagnu  to be bored  patrikaa  newspaper
gaajaa  marijuana  talab  salary
gaph garnu  to gossip  ustai  just like that

PART I

1. nepaal aaunubhandaa pahile tapaal kahaā hunuhunthyo, jim? ma amerikaamaa thiē. Jim! Where were you before you came to Nepal? I was in the U. S.
2. tapaal ke gardai hunuhunthyo? ma bekaar thiē. kaam khojdai-thiē. What were you doing then? I was unemployed. I was looking for a job.
3. kun kisimko kaam khojdai hunuhunthyo? jasto paayo ustai. What kind of job were you looking for? Whatever was available.
4. bekaar basdaakheri tapaailaai dikka laagdainathyo? ekdam dikka laagthyo. Were not you bored when you were without job? I was very bored.

PART II

1. hijo belukaa tapaal ke gardai hunuhunthyo? ma nayāā saDakmaa ghumdai thiē. What were you doing yesterday evening? I was cruising around New Road.

136
2. tapaaliko saathi ni ? u pani masangai ghumdaithiyo. How about your friend ? He was also cruising around with me.
3. tyatibilaa tyahāa maanisharuko kattiko bhiD thiyo ? nikai bhiD thiyo. How big was the crowd of people there at that time ? It was really crowded.
4. tiniharu ke garirahekaa thie ? kohi patrikaa kinirahekaa thie; dherai jaso gaph garirahekaa thie. What was everyone doing ? Some were buying newspapers but most of them were just gossiping.
5. ghar pharkādaa kati bajeko thiyo ? nau bajisakeko thiyo. What was the time when you got back home ? It was already nine o’clock.

(b)

1. timro keTi saathi ahile kahāa chha ? iraanmaa. Where is your girl friend these days ? In Iran.
2. iraanmaa paDhirakeko chha ? hoina, paDhirakeko chhaina. Is she going to school there ? No, she isn’t.
3. kaam gariraheko chha ta ? ho, angreji paDhaaune kaam gariraheko chha. Is she working there ? Yes, she is teaching English.
4. iraanmaa angreji paDhaaudaa ta I guess they pay pretty well when nikkai paisaa dinchha, hoina ? Yes, she gets a good salary. you teach English in Iran ?

(c)

1. Tam ke gari raheko chha ? u sutiraheko chha. What is Tom doing ? He is sleeping.
2. kina? uslaai sanho chhaina?  
   ho, usko peT dukheko chha.

3. usle peT dukheko ausadhi  
   khààdai chha?  
   kunni? hijo samma ta khaadai  
   thiyo.

4. ke ausadhi khààdai thiyo  
   tapaai laai thaahaa chha?  
   tyo ta thaahaa chhaina.

Why? Is he sick?  
Yes, he has a stomach ache.

Is he taking medicine for his  
stomach ache?  
He was taking some up until  
yesterday, but I don’t know about  
today.

Do you know what medicine he  
was taking?  
That I don’t know.

Comprehension—

raam ra usko bhaai ek din basantapurtira ghumna gae. raam  
ko bhaai pahile basantapur gaeko thiena. basantapurmaa uniharule  
dherai kisimkaa maanisharu dekhe. kohi phalphul bechirahekaa thie,  
kohi bideshiharulaai puraano chijbij bechirahekaa thie. ek chin pachhi  
raam ra usko bhaai hanumaan Dhokaatira gae. hunumaan Dhokaan  
najikaiko euTaa mandirmaa duijanaa maanchhe gaaajaa khaairhekaa  
thie. uniharuko kapaal laamo thiyo ra lugaa rangi changi. raam ra  
usko bhaai dubai laai ti maanchhe man parenan.

Questions

1. raam ra usko bhaai kahàà ghumna gae?
2. raamko baaai pahile basantapur gaeko thiyo?
3. uniharule tyahàà ke dekhe?
4. ti maanisharu ke garirahekaa thie?
5. ek chhin pachhi raam ra usko bhaai kataatira gae?
6. mandirmaa uniharule ke dekhe?
7. uniharu ke garirahekaa thie?
8. uniharukaa kapaal ra lugaa kastaa thie?
9. uniharulaai ti maanchhe man paryo?
1. Conjugation of Past Progressive.

garnu

Affirmative
ma gardaithiē.
tā gardaithiis.
u gardaithiyo.
haami gardaithiyaū.
timi gardaithiyau.
uniharu gardaithie.
tapaal gardai hunuhunthyo.

to do.
I was doing.
You were doing
He was doing.
We were doing.
You were doing.
They were doing.
You were doing.

Alternative Affirmative Form

ma gariraheko thiē.
tā gariraheko thiis.
u gariraheko thiyo.
haami garirahekaa thiyaū.
timi garirahekaa thiyaū.
uniharu garirahekaa thie.
tapaal garirahanubhaeko thiyo.

I was doing.
You were doing.
He was doing.
We were doing.
You were doing.
They were doing.
You were doing.

Negative

ma gariraheko thiina.
tā gariraheko thiinas.
u gariraheko thiena.
haami garirahekaa thienaū.
timi garirahekaa thienau.
uniharu garirahekaa thienan.
tapaal garirahanubhaeko thiena

I was not doing.
You were not doing.
He was not doing.
We were not doing.
You were not doing.
They were not doing.
You were not doing.

You are advised to learn the first Affirmative Form. The alternative affirmative form is also heard but not as often as the first. The negative of the Alternative Form is also sometimes used but note the following when negating something in the first Past Progressive Form:

timi paDhdai thiyau ? -Were you reading ?
hoina, ma saathisita kuraa gardaithie. —No, I was talking to my friend.

Instead of a negative form being applied, the person replying first denies that he was doing the activity asked in the question by saying ‘hoina’ or ‘chhaina’ and then says what he was actually doing in the first affirmative form of the past progressive tense.

2. The form ‘eko chha’ is translated into English in many ways, Study the following examples.

- Jim is sleeping.
- It is cloudy today.
- They are hungry.
- The rice is not ripe.
- Jane is cute.
- I have a headache.
- My watch is broken.
- My watch is lost.
- The lesson is not finished.
- The mirror is broken.
- There is red color in the jacket.
- Your clothes are dirty.

He is sleeping (He has fallen asleep)
- His dog is not dead.
- The film hasn’t started.

Study the following examples where the form ‘eko’ is used as an adjective.

- fried potato.
- rotten fruit
- cute girl.

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
LEGGON 30

VOCABULARY

Khet baari — field, farm
khojnu — to look for
pakaunu — to cook
samaaj shastra — sociology

PART I

(a)

1. namaste! dherai bhayo bhet nabhaekko! namaste! ho, dheraibhayo. Hello! I haven’t seen you for a long time.
   Yes, it has been long.

2. aajabholi ke garirahekaa chhau? kehipani gariraheko chhaina. kam khojdai chhu. What are you doing these days?
   I am not doing anything
   I am looking for a job.

3. kasto kaam garna sakchhau? khaanaa pakaune, ghar sapha garne. What kind of work can you do?
   Cooking, house cleaning.

4. ek mahinaako kati linchhau? pahile kaam gardaa mahinaako dui sae thiyo. How much do you want a month?
   It was two hundred a month when I worked last time.

5. ahile pani tyatimaa nai garchhau? Would you work for the same now also?
   garchhu. Yes. I would.

6. usobhae bholidekhi makaa aau. If so, come to my place starting tomorrow.
   hunchha, ma aauchhu. O. kay, I will come.
PART II

(b)

1. tapaalko bhaai aaja bholi kahāā chha ?
   amerikaamāa chha.
   Where is your younger brother these days ?
   He’s in Amerika.

2. ke garirahēko chha ?
   kalejmāa paDhirahēko chha.
   What is he doing ?
   He is going to college.

3. u ke bishaya paDhirahēko chha? What’s he studying ?
   u samaaj shastra paDhirahēko. He is studying sociology.
   chha.

(b)

1. nepaalmāa aunubhāndāa pahile tapaalk kahāā hunu hunthyo ?
   ma yuropmaa thiē.
   Where were you before coming to Nepal ?
   I was in Europe.

2. tyahāā ke garirahanu bhaeko thiyo ?
   tyahāā kaam garirahēko thiē.
   What were you doing there ?
   I was working there.

3. paDhi pani rahanu bhaeko thiyo ki ?
   ahā, paDhirahēko thiina.
   Were you also going to school ?
   No, I wasn’t.

4. ke kaam garirahanu bhaeko thiyo ?
   dherai jaso khet baarīmaa kaam ra kahilekaahl angreji paDhaa-
   une garathē.
   What were you doing ?
   I was working on farms most of of the time and sometimes teaching
   English.
1. timi hijo belukaa kahāā gayau? Where did you go yesterday evening?
   ma mero keTi saathikāā gaē. I went to my girl friend.

2. timi tyahāā jāādaakheri u ke gariraheko thiyo? What was she doing when you went there?
   u saathisanga kuraa gariraheko thiyo. She was talking to a friend.

3. keko baaremaa kuraa gariraheko thiyo, timilaai thaahaa chha? taking about?
   Do you know what they were ahā thaahaa chhaina. No, I don't.

4. timi tyahāā kati belaa samma basyau? How long did you stay there?
   rati das baje samma basē. I stayed there until ten P. M.

**Grammar notes**

1. Conjugation of the ‘...iraheko—’ form

**A. Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUNS</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>paDhiraheko chhu</td>
<td>chhaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>paDhiraheko chhas</td>
<td>chhainas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>paDhiraheko chha</td>
<td>chhaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami</td>
<td>paDhirahekaa chhaū</td>
<td>chhainaū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi</td>
<td>paDhirahekaa chhau</td>
<td>chhainaū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>paDhirahekaa chhan</td>
<td>chhainan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaal</td>
<td>paDhirahanu bhaeko chha</td>
<td>chhaina</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7. tyo hoTelko kun KoThaamaa galaichaa bichhaaeko chha?
8. salleridekhi tin maail TaDhaa kun Thaa chha?
9. tyahaan banekaa galaichaa kastaa hunchhan?
10. tapaai chyaalsaa ghumna jaanu bhaeko chha?

Grammar Notes

1. **baas paimchha** – lit: *Is shelter available here?*

   — a very common expression used while asking for overnight lodging during trekking.

2. Learn the following:

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jasari pani</td>
<td>any how, by all means</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jati pani</td>
<td>any amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jataa pani</td>
<td>everywhere, anywhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jasle pani</td>
<td>anybody</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. raamraa, plural of raamro.

152

B. Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUNS</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>paDhirahoko</td>
<td>thië</td>
<td>thiina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>paDhirahoko</td>
<td>thīis</td>
<td>thīinas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>paDhirahoko</td>
<td>thiyo</td>
<td>thiena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami</td>
<td>paDhirahēkāa</td>
<td>thiyaū</td>
<td>thienāa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi</td>
<td>paDhirahēkāa</td>
<td>thīau</td>
<td>thienau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>paDhirahēkāa</td>
<td>thie</td>
<td>thienan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaal</td>
<td>paDhirahānu bhaeko</td>
<td>thiyo</td>
<td>thiena</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

144
LESSON 31

aadi etc. nambari a hundred rupee note
baāki left over, remaining, baaki
nikaai very, exceedingly
bichaar thought, idea. bichaar
gaaule rural. gaaule
hajaaraū thousands. saaTi dinu to change (money)
harek every. saknu to be able to.
hawaaipatra aerogram. sundar beautiful, nice, pretty.

Part I

1. malaai Tikat dinus na. Please give me some stamps,
kati kati jaane diū ? Of what denominations ?
2. pachchis paise daswaTaa dinus ane ek rupiyāā jaane aaThwaTaa. Give me ten 25 paisa stamps and eight one rupee ones.
hawas. Okay, sir.
3. hawaai patra pani ta hola ni ? Do you also have aerograms ?
   chha, katiwaTaa chaahine yahāa laai ?
4. DeDh rupiyāā waalaa pandhra waTaa dinus ta. Please give me fifteen one rupee and fifty paisa aerograms.
   hawas. O. K.
tapaal nikaai dherai chiTTThi lekhnu hunchha ho ?
5. ā saathiharu laai chiTTThi nalekheko dherai bhayo.
   jammaa kati bhayo ?
   tettis rupiyāā dinus. Well, its been long time since I have written letters to my friends.
   hunchha ma saaTi diālaa. How much is it altogether ?
   6. masanga nambari maatra chha. Give me thirty three rupees please.
   hunchha ma saaTi diālaa. I only have a hundred rupee note.
   That’s all right. I can change it.

145

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
1. Tirkhaa laagyo bhane tapaal ke garnuhunchha?
   Paani khaanchhu.

2. Bhok laagyo bhane ni?
   Bhaat khaanchhu.

3. Taauko dukhyo bhane ke garnu hunchha ni?
   Asapirin khaanchhu.

4. Disaa laagyo bhane ni?
   Peragorik khaanchhu.

(a) What do you do if you get thirsty?
   I drink water.

What about if you get hungry?
   I eat rice.

What do you do if you have a headache?
   I take aspirin.

What do you do when you have diarrhoea?
   I take paragoric.

(b) What are you going to do when training is over?
   I am going to teach in a village.

What if you don’t like the village?
   I will go back to the States.

What’ll you do in the States?
   I will look for a job when I get there.

What’ll you do if you don’t get a job?
   I’ll go to school.
1. aaja di̍ it̄o ke garne bicaar chha ?
   saathiharu aae bhane taas khelne.
2. aaenan bhane ni ?
   aaenan bhane ghunma jaanchhu.
3. paani parlaa jasto chha ni aaja ta ?
   paani paryo bhane raksi khaaera basnu parlaa.
4. miTho raksi chha bhane ma pani baschhu.
   miTho ta chhaina, tyahi bijoko baaki alikati chha.

What are you thinking of doing this afternoon ?
If my friends come along I’ll play cards.
If they don’t ?
If they don’t I’ll go for a walk.
Looks like it’s going to rain to-day ?
If it tains I’ll spend the day drinking raksi.
If you have good raksi, I’ll also stay on.
I don’t have any good stuff. I just have a little bit left over from yesterday.

COMPREHENSION:

nepalkaa gaaū, gaūle jiwan, pahaD, himaalaya aadi herna man laagyo bhane pokharaa jaanu parchha. hawai jahajmaa gayo bhane pokharaa paune ek ghanTaa ma parchha sakinchha. basmaa gayo bhane saat ghanTaa laagchha tara mini basmaa gayo bhane pāach ghanTaamaa sajilai puginchna pokharaako phewaa taal pani nikai sundar chha. jomsom bhunne Th̄aa pokharaako uttartira parchha. jomsommaa harek barsha hijaaraa bidsihiuru ghamna jaanchhun. tyahaa pugna chaar pāach din laagchha. tara jahaajmaa gayo bhane ta aadhaa ghanTaa mai pugna sakinchha.

QUESTIONS
1. nepaalmmaa gaaū, pahaD aadi herna kahī jannu parchha ?
2. hawai jahajmaa gayo bhane kati samayamaa pugna sakinchha ?
3. basmaa gayo bhane kati ghanTaa laagchha ?
4. minibasmaa gayo bhane ni ?
5. phewaataal kasto chha ?
7. jomsommaa harek barsha kati bideshi ghumna jaanchhan ?
8. tyahāa pugna kati din laagchha ?
9. jahaajmaa gayo bhane ni ?

**Grammar Notes**

1. Conditional clause ‘bhane’.

   paani paryo bhane ma jaanna If it rains, I won’t go.
   or
   paani pare ma jaanna.
   uniharu aaebhane ma aaalaa. I’ll come if they come.
   dherai kaam garyo bhane If you work a lot you get tired.
   thakaai laagchha.
   aaap mahango bhae nakina. Don’t buy the mangoes if they
   are expensive.

   Note that the verb ending of the subordinate conditional clause is generally in the
   past tense.

   yahāa-polite for tapaai
   pugna sakinchha- can be reached.
LESSON 32

VOCABULARY

audhi extremely
baas shelter, lodging
biu seed
chheu side
chhoDi dinu to leave
jahile pani always, all the time
jaslaai pani to any one
je pani anything
jun pani any (thing)
lagi dinu to take, carry something for some one.
palTinu to lie down
sadar mukaam district centre
thakaai fatigue
Thik hunu to be all right
uhi the same, the very one

PART I

1. e didi ! yahaa baas paainchha? Oh sister ! Can I get a place to stay here ?

paainchha. kati janaa hunu- Sure. How many of you are there?
hunchha ?

2. tin janaa chhaa. There are three of us.

kuaanaa ke chha ? What kind of food do you have ?

uhi daal bhaat ta ho ni, aru ke Lentils and cooked rice, of course.
hunu ! What else would we have ?

3. maasu chhaina ra ? Don’t you have any meat ?

maasu ta kukhuraa kaaTnu We’ll have to kill a chicken for
parchha. meat.

149
4. sutne Thaa kataa chha ni ? maathi ko Thaa chha.
Where is a place to sleep ? There’s a room upstairs.

5. lau chhiTo bhaat pakaaunos. haami ek chhin paltinchhaa.
saarhai thaakekaa chhaa.
raksi khaanus na. thakaai Thik bhai haalchha ni
O.K. Please hurry and cook the meal. We’ll lie down for a while.
We are very tired.
Drink some raksi. It’ll take care of your fatigue.

PART II

(a)

1. jim raksi khaanchha ? khaanchha.
Does Jim drink raksi ?
Yes, he does.

2. Tim ni ?
Tim pani khaanchha ?
How about Tim ?
He does too.

How about Tim’s brother ?
He drinks too.

4. ko raksi khaanchha.
jo pani khaanchha.
Who drinks raksi ?
Everybody drinks raksi.

(b)

1. asanmaa churoT paainchha ? paainchha.
Are cigarettes available in Asan ?
Yes, they are available.

2. aalu ni ?
aalu pani paainchha.
How about potatoes ?
Potatoes are also available.

3. biu paainchha ki ?
paainchha. kina napainu ?
Do you think seeds are available there ?
Sure. Why not ?

4. asanmaa ke ke paainchha ?
asanmaa je pani paainchha.
What’s available in Asan ?
Everything is available in Asan.
1. I hear that you are going to Pokhara tomorrow? Is that right?
I've thought about going.

2. Could you take this letter for me?
Sure. I'll take it for you.

3. Who shall I give it to?
You can give it to anybody.

4. What if there isn't anybody at home?
There is a store by the side of my house.
You can leave it there.

Comprehension.

I hear that you are going to Pokhara tomorrow? Is that right?

Questions.

1. pohor tapaal kahaa ghumna janu bhaeko thiyo !
2. tyataatira kahile jaaDo hunchha ?
3. kina ?
4. tyahaa ko nyaano lugaa lagaauchhan ?
5. soluko sadar mukaam kahaa ho ?
6. soluko serpaa hoTel kasto chha ?
7. tyo hoTelko kun KoThaamaa galachildaa bichhaaako chha?
8. salleridekhi tiu maail TaDhaa kun Thaan chha?
9. tyahaa baneka galachildaa kastaa hunchhan?
10. tapaei chyaalsaa ghumna jaanu bhaeko chha?

**Grammar Notes**

1. **baas paainchha**—lit: *Is shelter available here?*
   
   "a very common expression used while asking for overnight lodging during trekking."

2. Learn the following:
   
   1. jasari pani: *any how, by all means*
   2. jati pani: *any amount*
   3. jataa pani: *everywhere, anywhere*
   4. jasle pani: *anybody*

3. raamraa, plural of raamro.
LESSON 23

VOCABULARY

gaarho laagnu  —  to find difficult.
gaeko  —  last (as in past)
jhanDai  —  almost.
sikchhak  —  teacher.

(a)

1. hijo kina aaunu bhaena ? Taauko dukhekole.
   Why didn’t you come yesterday ? Because I had a headache.

2. kina Taauko dukhyo ta ? dherai raksi khaaekole.
   Why did you have a headache ? Because I drank too much raksi.

3. ke ausadhi khaanubhayo ta ? kehipani khaalna.
   What medicine did you take ? I didn’t take anything.

4. kina nakhaaeko ta ? khaana man nalaagekole.
   Why not ? Because I didn’t want to.

(b)

1. aaja bihaana kina abelaa uThnubhayo ?
   Why did you get up late this morning ?

2. hijo raati abelaa sutekole.
   Because I went to bed late last night.

3. kina abelaa suthnubhayo ta ? mero saathiharu aaeakaale.
   Why did you go to bed late ? Because my friends came over.

4. saathiharu kina aaeaka thie ta ?
   Why did your friends come ? My friends came over because there was a wedding feast at my house yesterday.

153

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
1. chiyaamaa kina dudh raakhenau ?
   dudh nabhaeko hunaale.
2. dudh lina kina nagaeko ta ?
   phursad nabhaekohunaale.
3. kina phursad bhaena ?
   lugaa dhunu parekole.
4. sabai lugaa dhoyau ta ?
   dhoina.
5. kina na dhoeko ta ?
   saabun siddhiekole.

Why didn’t you put milk in the tea ?
Because there isn’t any milk.

Why didn’t you go out and buy milk ?
Because I didn’t have any free time.

Why didn’t you have the time ?
Because I had to wash clothes.

Did you wash all the clothes ?
No, I didn’t.

Why did not you wash all of them?
Because I did not have enough soap.

Comprehension:-

maaik nepaal aaeko jhanDaï tin barsha bhai sakyo. u bandipurko euTaa iskulmaa paDhaaachha. nepaal aaunu bhandaa pahile amerikaa maa sikchhak talim liekole uslaai paDhaauna gaarho laagdaina. uslaai Treking assaddhyai man parchha. gaeko hiïdmaa uslaai jomsom jaana manlaageko thiyo tara sancho nabhaekole jaana sakena. hijo nayaa saDaktira ghunna jëedaa uslaai bheTeko thië. aaune haptaa jomsom jaanchu bhanthyo. malaai pani jaaë bhanthyo. tara ke garne? malaai phursad chhaina.

Questions:-

1. maaik nepaal aaeko kati barsha bhayo ?
2. u ke garchha ?
3. uslaai paDhaauna kina gaarho laagdaina ?
4. uslaai Treking kattiko manparchha ?
5. gaeko hiïdmaa uslaai ke garna man laageko thiyo ?

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
6. jaana sakyo ta?
7. kina?
8. hijo uslaai bheTnubhaeko thiyo?
9. ke gardaa?
10. usle ke bhanthyo?
11. tapaal kina jomsom jaanuhunna?

**Grammar Notes**

Forms—

nagaeko hunaale
bhaeko hunaale
na lageko hunaale
gaeuko hunaale
napaaeko hunaale
bhaekole, laagekole, naaekole, napaaekole

**Usage**

Study the following examples:—

Paisaa nabhaekole kehipani kinina. I didn’t buy anything because I didn’t have any money.

Since I have lots to do, I am not going to go out.

Gopal didn’t come to school, because he had a headache.

The teacher got angry because the students ran away.

The road is not damaged, as it has not rained yet.

I can’t work because I am tired.
Notes:

a) kinabhane is the Nepali equivalent of *because.* but it is often left out in every day speech. Note the following examples carefully.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I. tyo jholaa kina nakineko ?</th>
<th>Why didn’t buy that bag ?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>paisaa thiena. saarai mahango bhayo.</td>
<td>I don’t have money. It’s very expensive.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>II. hijo iskul jaanubhayo ?</th>
<th>Did you go to school yesterday ?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gaina.</td>
<td>No, I didn’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kina ?</td>
<td>Why ?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taauko dukhyo. jaana sakina</td>
<td>I had a headache and couldn’t go.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>III. ali khaanos na.</th>
<th>Have some more, please.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bho khaanna.</td>
<td>No, I won’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kina ?</td>
<td>Why ?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aghaai sakeko chhu.</td>
<td>I’m full.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IV. kina aaunu bhaena ?</th>
<th>Why didn’t you come ?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kaam paryo.</td>
<td>I had work to do.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b) The forms “era” and ‘ekole’ are also used in the same context. It connects two clauses and implies cause and effect.

| paisaa nabhaera nakineko.    | I didn’t buy it because         |
| (nabhackole)                 | I didn’t have any money.        |
| Taauko dukhera nagaeko.      | I didn’t come because           |
| (dukhekole)                  | I had a headache.               |
| kaam parera aauna sakina.    | I couldn’t come because         |
| (parekole)                   | I had work to do.               |
| dherai paani parera kheti    | Because of heavy rainfall the   |
| bigriyo.                     | crops were damaged.             |
| TikaT napaaera jaana sakekaa | We have not been able to go beca-|
| chhainaa.                    | use we didn’t get tickets.      |
2. *re* is a particle often used in spoken Nepali.

   It is used at the end of a statement to denote second hand information.

Examples:—

u bholi jaane re. I hear that he is going tomorrow.
wahāā paas hunubhayo re. I hear that

They say that he passed.
So and so says that

`sodhthyo` literally, *he used to ask*—this form is used in indirect speech.

    tapaal pani masanga jaane He asked me if I would like to go bhanera usle malaai sodhtyoy. with him.
    usle bholi aanchhu bhanthyo. He said that he would come
tomorrow.
LESSON 34

VOCABULARY

atyaanta very much
kohi anybody, somebody
naumaaleko unboiled
niko hunu to be well, to be cured
umaaleko boiled
uThaaunu to wake-up

(a)

1. ek ghanTaa aghi kohi aae ko thiyo ? Did anyone come here an hour ago ?
    ho, ek jaanaa maanchhe aae ko thiyo. Yes, one man did come.
2. ko aae ko thiyo ? Who was it ?
    mero saathi. My friend.
3. u aajaa bholi ke gardaichha ? What's he doing these days ?
    u iskulmaa paDhaaüdaichha. He's teaching in a school.
4. usle paDhaaune iskul kahaa chha ? Where is the school he teaches at?
    usle paDhaaune iskul pokharaa najikaiko gaaamaa chha. The school where he teaches is in a village near Pokhara.
5. u basne gaaiko naam ke ho ni ? What's the name of the village where he lives?
    u basne gaaiko naam deuraali. Deurali is the name of the village where he lives.

(b)

1. kaalo Topi laaune maanchhe ko ho ? Who is the man wearing the black cap ?
kaalo Topi laaune maanchhe prakaash ho.

2. u paDhne iskul yahaa baaTa kati TaaDhaa chha?
   u paDhne ishul yahaa baaTa najikai chha.

3. u basne Deraa mahango chha ki sasto chha?
   u basne Deraa sasto chha.

4. usko iskulmaa paDhaaune masTarharu kati chhan?
   baara janaa jati chhan.

---

The man wearing the black cap is Prakash.

How far is the school where he studies from here?

Th~ schbol he goes to is close to here.

Is the apartment he lives in expensive or cheap?

It is cheap.

How many teachers teach in his school?

There are about twelve.

---

1. tapaal ke kitaab paDhdai hunuhunchha?
   ma King Lear paD'd.eichhu. I'm reading King Lear.

2. King Lear kasle lekheko ho?
   King Lear Shakespeare lekheko ho.

3. Shakespeare le lekheko aru pani kitaab paDhnu bhaeko c'ha?
   ho, maile Hamlet ra The Tempest Yes, I have read Hamlet and The
   pani paDheko chhu. Tempest as well.

4. tapaailaai unle lekheko kitaab man parchha?
   ho, d'erai man parchha.

---

What book are you reading?

Who wrote King Lear?

Have you read any other books written by him?

Do you like books written by him?

---

What sort of water does Jim drink?

He drinks boiled water.
2. naumaaleko paani khāyo bhane uslaai ke hunchha ? uslaai peT dukchha.

What happens when he drinks unboiled water ?
His stomach hurts.

3. peT dukhdaakheri u ke gaichha ?
usle aaphno aphisko DaakTarle dieko ausadhi khaanchha.

What does he do when his stomach hurts ?
He takes medicine given by the doctor at this office.

4. tyo DaakTarle dieko ausadhile uslaai niko hunchha ?
dheraijaso niko hunchha.

Does the medicine given by that doctor make him well ?
Yes, it usually makes him well.

Comprehension

maaikle hijo usko baale lēkhēko chiTTThi paayo. chiTTThi paaüdaa uslaai atyanta khusi laagyo. kinañhane usle chiTTThi napaeko ek mahināa bhācko thiyo. chiTTThi paDhi sakepāchhi u usko saathi jимko Deraamaa gayo. jимko sutirahēko raehchha. maaikle uslaai uThaayo ra sinemaa ħerna jaane kuraa garyo. jимko pani sinemaa ħerna jaane bichaar thiyo. chiyyaa siyaa khāera uniharu sinemaa haltira gae. tāra TikatT siddhisakeko rah chha. tyaskaaran uniharule ‘black’ garne maarchhe khōjera pāch rupiyāako TikatTlaai aaTh rupiyāā diera here.

Questions—

1. maaikle hijo kasle lekhēko chiTTThi paayo ?
2. chiTTThi paaüdaa uslaai kasto laagyo ?
3. kina ?
4. chiTTThi paDhisakepāchhi u kahā gayo ?
5. jимko garañrāheko raēchha ?
6. maaikle uslaai uThāaera ke kuraa garyo ?
7. jимko ke bicaar thiyo ?
8. chiyaa siyaa khaaera uniharu kataatira gae?
9. uniharule kina ‘black’ garne maanchhe khoje?
10. uniharule pāach rupiyāāko TikaTlaai kati diera sinemaā heīre?

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. In English Relative Pronouns or Adverbs are usually used to introduce Adjectival clauses. In Nepali, however they are seldom used in this way. Study the following examples—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tapaalle sodheko prashna</td>
<td>The question that you asked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jaapaanmaa baneko saamaan</td>
<td>Things (that are) made in Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaalle dieko kalam</td>
<td>The pen that you gave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timile lekhne kitaab</td>
<td>the book that you’ll write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usle kinne moTar</td>
<td>The car that he’s going to buy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>umaaleko paani</td>
<td>boiled water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kuheko āāp</td>
<td>rotten mango</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raato saari laaeko keTi</td>
<td>The girl in the red sari</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LESSON 35

Vocabulary

bhaansa garnu  to eat a meal (polite)
bhuraa  fingerling
bish  poison
jangali  wild
kisaan  farmer
maachhaa  fish
maadhyamik bidyalaya  secondary school
maarnu  to kill
maddat  help, assistance
to assist
maddat garnu  Fisheries Development Centre
matsya bikaas kendra  to raise
paalnu  leisure
phursad  pond
pokhari  desire
rahar  to trade, to change
saaTnu  to dry
sukaaunu

Part I

1. tapaat yahi gaaunmaa bahun-  Do you live in this village?
huncáha ?
hajur. That’s right.

2. yahko maadhyamik bidyalaya-  Do you teach in the secondary
maachhamaa paDhaaunu hunchha school here?
ki kaso ?
hoina, ma ta kisaanharulaai No, I help farmers raise fish.
maachhamaa paalna maddat
garchhu.
3. malaai pani maachhaa paalne rahar chha. maachhaa paalna ke ke garnu parchha?

I also would like to raise fish. What does one need to do to raise fish?

4. tapaalko pokhari chha ki chhaina?

Do you have a pond or not?

Yes, I do.

5. sabbhandaa pahile pokharilaii sukaaunu parchha ani bish raakhnu parchha.
bish raakhera tyasmaa bhaekaa jangali maachhaaharulaii maarnu parchha.
bhuraa kinna kahaa paainchha ni?

First of all you should dry the pond and then poison it.

You should kill all the wild fish in it by putting poison in the pond.

Where can I buy fingerlings?

Fingerlings are available at the Fisheries Development Centre.

O. K. I’ll come next week.

5. bhuraa ta matsya bikaas kendra maa paainchha.
haamro gaa&tira pani aaunus na phursadmaa.

6. hunchha. aarko haptaatira aaulaa.

PART II

(a)

1. tapaalko ghaDiko kati paryo?
adhaai saya.

How much did you pay for your watch?

Two hundred and fifty rupees.

2. kineko kati bhayo?

saat barsha bhayo.

How long ago did you buy it?

Seven years ago.

3. puraano bhaechha.

samaya raamrosanga didaina holaa, hoina?

It’s quite old.

It doesn’t keep good time, does it?
puraano bhaetaa pani samaya ta raamro dinchha.

4. merosanga saaTaũ na ta ? bho. saaTdina.

Even though it’s old, it keeps good time.

How about trading it for mine?

No, thanks.

1. bhaansaa bhayo tapaalko ? khaaeko chhaina.
2. bhaat nakhaaeko bhaeta bhok laageko holaa tapaailai, hoina?
   bhaat nakhaaeko bhae pani bhok laageko chhaina.
3. kina ta ? bihaana abelaa khaaeko thiē.
4. khaanaa nakhaaepani chiyya siyaa Even if you don’t want to eat any khaana jaawaī. hunchha, jaawaī.

Did you eat?

No, I haven’t.

If you haven’t eaten, you must be hungry?

Even though I haven’t eaten I’m not hungry.

How come?

I had my morning meal late.

Even if you don’t want to eat any food, let’s go to have some tea.

O. K. Let’s go.

COMPREHENSION.

jeph nepaal aaeko pāach mahinaa maatra bhae pani u raamro sanga nepali bolna sakchha. u basne gaaū dherai ramaailo nabhae pani uslaai tyo gaaū man pareko chha. usle dherai jaso aaphno bhaan-
sele pakaakeko nepali khaanaa khaee pani kahile kahl ameriki khaa-
naa pakaera khaanchha. usle pa ธaaune bidyaalayamaa pug na pug saat saya bidyaarthiharu pa ธchhan. tyati dherai bidyaarthi bhae pani bidyaalayamaa keTIharuko sankhyaa bhane nikai kam chha. usko Deraa baaTa bidyaalaya dui maail TaaDhaa chha. TaaDhaa bhae pani u sadhaį hľDera jaanchha.
1. jeph nepaal aakko kati mahinaa bhayo?
2. u nepaal aekko paach mahinaa maatra bhae pani u kasto nepaali bolchha?
3. u basne gaañ kasto chha?
4. uslaai usko gaañ man pareko chha ta?
5. u dherai jaso kun kisimko khaanaa khaanchha?
6. kasle pakaauchha ni?
7. u sadhai nepaali khaanaa khaanchha ta?
8. usle paDhaaune bidyaalayamaa keTiharuko sankyhaa kati chhaa?
9. jephko DeraabaaTa bidyaalaya najik chha ki TaaDhaa chha?
10. u saaikalmaa bidyaalaya jaanchha?
11. kasari jaanchha ta?
12. tapaal bhae tyati laamo baaTo hiDera jaanuhunthyo holaa?

GRAMMAR NOTES

1) Expression of contrast (but, though, even if clauses).

Food is hot but I like it. The food is hot but I like it.

miTho laagyo.

He is fat but weak.

u moTo bhaetaa pani kamjor chha.

Though I haven’t eaten I’m not hungry.

khaanaa nakhaaetaa pani malaai bhok laageko chhaina.

FORMS AND USAGES;

Study the following examples carefully and note the forms and usages:

1) kaaThmaandDu raajdhaani bhae pani malaai man pardaina. Though Kathmandu is the capital I don’t like it.

2) raame dublo bhae pani baliyo thiyo. Though Rame was thin he was strong.
3) mero bhaai moTo bhae pani kamjor chha. My younger brother is weak though he is fat.

4) mero ghaDi puraano bhae pani Taaim raamro dinchha. Though my watch is an old one it keeps good time.

5) usle bi. e. pass gare pani kaam paaeko chhaina. Though he has a B. A. he hasn’t gotten any job.

6) u khub koshis gare pani paas huna saktaina. Though he tries very hard he can’t pass.

7) gopal naaae pani ma aaächhu. I’ll come even if Gopal doesn’t come.

8) khaanaa nakhaaetaapani bhok laageko chhaina. I’m not hungry though I haven’t eaten.

9) raamlaii dekhe pani bolaaina. Though I saw Ram I didn’t call him.

10) Taauko dukhe pani u kaam gardai chha. Though he has a headache he is working.

11) paani pare pani garmi chha. Though it rained, it is hot.

12) yo gaaũmaa dhaaraa nabhae pani paaniko dukkhaa chhaina. Though there are no water taps, there is no scarcity of water.

13) aaja sājha aaunos, hai. Please come (to my place) this evening.

miTing chha. Dhilo hunchha ki. There is a meeting, It might be late. Please come even if it is late.

2. je, Jahää etc. e pani

jahää gaepani u chhoraalaai sangai laijaanchha. He takes his son with him wherever he goes.

jo aae pani ma chhaina. bhanidinu. Whoever comes, tell (him) that I’m not here.

solTimaa je khaaepani mahango chha. Whatever you eat at the Soaltee, it is expensive.

166
je aushadhi khaee pani sancho bhaena.
jahile aaepani u gharmaa hudaina.

No matter what medicine I take, I still don’t feel well.
He is not home no matter when I go.

3. epani hunchha

Examples :

kaam sakiyo raam?
sakiyo.
uso bhae timi gae pani hunchha.
maile ke ke khaana hunchha DaakTar?
piro, amilo baahek je khaeepani hunchha.

Is the work finished, Ram?
Yes, it is,
In that case, you can go.
What can I eat doctor?
You can eat anything except hot and sour things.

4. epani na ..epani

timi gaepani nagaepani ma ta jaanchhu

Whether you go or not I am going.
LESSON 36

VOCABULARY

anushaashan discipline maanabiki shaastra humanities
badmaas mischiveous raastra bhaashaa national language
bigyaan science rusi Russian
byabaahaar treatment sanskrit Sanskrit
ghanTaaghar clock-Tower sanskriti Culture
dwaaraa by sarkaari Government
kaaryaalaya office taalim training

(a)

1. nepaalko sabhbandaa puraano kalej kun ho.?
   tri chandra kalej ho. Which is the oldest college in Nepal?
   Tri-chandra college.

2. tyo kalej kahaanira chha?
ratna paark najikai ghanTaaghar sangai chha. Where is that college?
   It’s near Ratna Park, very close to the clock-tower.

3. tyahaa kun kun bishaya paDhaainchha?
   bigyaan ra maanabiki shaastra What subjects are taught there?
   paDhaainchha. Science and Humanities.

4. tyahhaa paDhne bidyaarthiharu- Do the students who go there have
   sanga paisaa liinchha ki lildaina? to pay tuition fees?
   liinchha. Yes, they do.

168
1. nepaalko sarikaari kaaryaalaya harumaa kun bhaasha bolinchha?
   nepaali bhaashaa bolinchha. What language is spoken in the government offices in Nepal?

2. iskul, kalejharumaa ni?
   tyahaapani nepaali nai bolinchha. Nepali. How about in schools and colleges?

3. kina aru bhaashaa bolidalna?
   nepaali bhaashaa rastra bhaashaa bhaekole. Why aren’t other languages spoken?

4. tyaha chiThThiharu pani nepaali bhaashaaamaa nai lekhinchha?
   ho, nepaali bhaashaamaa nai lekhinchha. Are the letters there also written in Nepali?

(c)

1. piskorko taalimmaa kati ghanTaa nepaali sikaainchha ek dinko chaar dekhi chha ghanTaa nepaali sikaainchha. How many hours of Nepali is taught in a Peace Corps training?

2. aru ke ke sikaainchha ni – nepaalko sanskriti ra swayam sewakle garne kaamko baare-maa pani sikaainchha. Four to six hours a day. What else is taught?

3. yi kuraaharu nepaali dwaaraa sikaainchha ki amerikiharu dwaara?
   nepaali ra amerikiharu dubai dwaara sihaainchha. Nepali culture and the nature of the job the volunteers are going to do. Are these things taught by Nepalis or Americans?

   They are taught both by Nepalis and Americans.
4. taalim kaaThmaanDumaa diinchha ki aru Thaaumaa diinchha ?

dheraijaso kaaThmmanDu baahira gaaumaa diinchha.

Is the training given in Kathmandu or somewhere else?
Most of the time, it is given in villages outside of Kathmandu.

COMPREHENSION


QUESTION

1. maaikle paDhaaune iskul kun ho ?
2. yahaa kun kun bhaashaa paDhaainchha ?
3. yahaa rusi bhaashaa pani paDhaainchha ?
4. hindi ni ?
5. yahaa basne keTaakeTilaai kasto khaanaa dinchha ?
6. iskulmaa harek haptaa ke garinchha ?
7. yo iskul kun kun mahinaamaa banda garinchha ?
8. kastaa bidyaarthiharulaai sajaaya diinchha ?
9. yo iskulko anushaashan kasto chha ?

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. ‘paDhaainchha’, ‘garinchha’, ‘sikaainchha’ are the passive froms of the verb ‘paDbaaunu’, ‘garna’ and ‘sikaunu’. In Nepali most verbs are frequently used in the passive form.
LESSON 37

VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anekaā</td>
<td>several</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>byawasthāa</td>
<td>system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chhetra</td>
<td>region, area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>janasankhyāa</td>
<td>population</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>karoD</td>
<td>ten million</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sri pāch mahaaraajaadhiraaj</td>
<td>–His Majesty the King.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>krishi</td>
<td>agriculture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laakh</td>
<td>one hundred thousand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peshāa</td>
<td>occupation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pratisat</td>
<td>percent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raajmaarga</td>
<td>Highway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yaataayaat</td>
<td>transportation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PART I

1. nepaalko janasankhyaa kati chha ?
   ek karoD dash laakh.
   What is the population of Nepal?
   Eleven million.

2. dherai jaso nepaaliharuko pesaa ke ho ? krishi.
   What is the occupation of most Nepalese?
   Agriculture.

3. kati pratishat nepaliharu saakchhyar chhan ? unnais pratishat.
   What percentage of the Nepalese are literate?
   Nineteen percent.

4. nepaalmaa yaataayaatko byawasthāa kasto chha ni ? euTaa purba pashchim raajmaarg chha. pahaaDi chhetrakaa anekaā Thaaāharumaa hawaii jahaajbaaTa pani pugna sakin-cha.
   What is the transportation system like in Nepal?
   There is an east-west Highway. Also several places in the mountainous regions can be reached by aeroplanes.

5. yahāākaa maanisharu kun kun dharma maanchhan ni ? hindu ra bauddha dharma.
   Which religions do the people of Nepal follow?
   Hinduism and Buddhism.
6. nepaalkaa shri paach maahaaraajajaadhirajko naam ke ho ?
birendra bir bikram shaha dev. What is the name of His Majesty the King of Nepal ?
Birendra Bir Bikram Shah Dev.

PART II

(a)

1. maaiklaai bheTnu bhayo ta ?
   bheTë. Did you see Mike ?
   Yes, I did.

2. ke bhannu bhayo ta ?
   bholi aaunu holaa bhanera bhane. I told him to come tomorrow.

3. usle ke bhanyo ta ?
   aauchhu bhanera bhanyo. What did he say ?
   He said that he would come.

(b)

1. bholikolaagi TikaT lyaaunu bhayo ta ?
   lyaaina. Did you get the ticket for tomorrow ?
   No, I didn’t.

2. kina ta ?
   TikaT chhaina bhanera bhanyo. Why not ?
   He said that there weren’t any tickets

3. parsikolaagi lyaaunu bhaena ta?
   parsikolaagi bholi aaunus bhanera bhanyo. Didn’t you buy one for the day after tomorrow ?
   He told me to come tomorrow for the day after tomorrow.

(c)

1. Daaktarkaa gayau ta ?
   gaë. Did you go to the Doctor’s ?
   Yes, I did.

172
2. ke bhanyo ta?  
peTmaa jukaa parekochha bhanera bhanyo.

What did he say?  
He said that I have worms.

3. ausadhi diyo ta?  
diena.

Did he give you any medicine?  
No, he didn’t.

4. kina ni?  
bholi aaunus bhanyo.

Why not?  
He said that I should go tomorrow.

COMPREHENSION

hijo maaikle makaha aachhu bhanera bhaneko thiyo. dinbhari uslaai maile parkhe. u naaekole aaja bihaana usko Deraamaa ga. u suti raheko rahechha. hijo kina aaunu bhaena bhanera maile uslaai sodhe. usle peT dukhera auna sakina bhanera bhanyo. bholi aaunu-hunchha ta bhanai maile sodhha sancho bhayo bhanee aaulaa bhanera bhanyo. uslaai DaakTarle paani sathai umaalera khaana bhaneko thiyo re. tara usko isTov bigrera paani umaalna napaekole tyasai khaaechha. naumaaleko paani khaaeko hunaale usko peTmaa jukaa paryo holaa, tysaile ta usko peT dukheko chha.

QUESTIONS

1. maaikle ke bhaneko thiyo?
2. dinbhari tapaalle kaslaai parkhanubhayo?
3. aaja kina usko Deraamaa jaanubhayo?
4. u ke gariraheko rahechha?
5. tapaalle uslaai ke bhannu bhayo?
6. usle ke bhanyo?
7. ani tapaalle ke sodhunubhayo?
8. usle ke bhanyo ta?
9. uslaai DaakTarle ke bhaneko thiyo re?
10. usle paani kina umaalena?
11. usko peTmaa ke bhayo holaa?
12. usko peT kina duhheko chha?
13. tapaai pani naumaaleko paani khaanuhunchha?
**Grammar Notes**

**Reported Speech**

When we report someone's speech to someone else we call it “Reported speech”.

You know that the particle ‘re’ is used in this way and is very common in spoken Nepali but is not much used in written Nepali.

There is one other form of “Reported Speech” which is common both in written and in spoken Nepali. In this form the actual words of the speaker are quoted, and the tense of the verb is not changed. Some change is made, however, in the person of the pronoun and the verb, and the word ‘bhanera’ is used to the end of the words quoted. Here are some examples.

**STATEMENT:**

A) Direct– ma paalpaa jaanna. I won’t go to Palpa.
B) Indirect– usle paalpaa jaanna (bhanera) bhanyo. He said that he would not go to Palpa.

usle paalpaa jaanna bhanera malaai bhanyo.

He told me that he would not go to Palpa.

In the first sentence the word ‘bhanera’ is optional but in the second one it is necessary.

**COMMAND**

Direct: bholi aau. Come tomorrow.
Indirect: usle bholi aau (bhanera) bhanyo He said that I should come tomorrow.
usle bholi aau bhanera malaai bhanyo.

He told me to come tomorrow.

**QUESTION**

Direct : timi basne ghar yahi ho ?
Indirect : usle timi basne ghar yahi ho bhanera sodhyo.
Note that in the following sentences ‘bhanera’ (lit.; having said) is not a sign of Indirect Speech.

timi aauchhau bhanera ma aaeko. I came because (I knew that) you were coming.

raam pahilaa hunchha bhanera sabaile anumaan garekaa thie. Everybody had guessed that Ram would be first (in the exam).

FUTURE TENSE

Although simple present tense—ma jaanchhu—etc. is often used for future indefinite tense, there are two other future indefinite forms in use and should be learnt.

FUTURE CONDITIONAL

The ‘lāa’ form is sometimes used with references to future action. It is called Future Conditional.

Examples:

ma bholi aaulaa, ahile jaanchhu. I’ll come tomorrow, but I am leaving now.

kitaab paDhisakepachhi tapaallaa diālāa. I’ll give this book to you after I finish reading it.

baabulaai hernus khaat baaTa laDlaa. Please look at the baby. It’ll fall off from the cot.

haamiharu kati baje taansen pugaulaa? What time will we arrive at Tansen?

aaja raati paani parlaa jasto chha. Looks like it’ll rain tonight.

mohan yo paTak paas hola ta? Do you think Mohan will pass this year?

yo baabu kahile hiDna sakne holaa? When will this baby be able to walk?
I don’t think they’ll come. Let us not wait.

**Future Conditional Tense.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>jaaulaa</td>
<td>jaawaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ta</td>
<td>jaalaa</td>
<td>jawainas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>jaalaa</td>
<td>jaawaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami(haru)</td>
<td>jaawaulaa</td>
<td>jaawainau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi (haru)</td>
<td>jaaulaa</td>
<td>jaawainau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>jaalaaan</td>
<td>jawaainan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaai (haru)</td>
<td>jaanuholaa</td>
<td>jaanu hawaina</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Indefinite Tense**

The ‘nschhu’ form is used in formal written Nepali, Radio broadcasts and newspapers.

**Examples:**

1. “bholi aparāa bhaThamaanDu “It’ll rain in the Kathmandu Valley tomorrow afternoon”. (weather forecast over Radio Nepal)

2. “pardhaan mantrile bholi nai bhaaratiyar aatahaaarsanga kuraakaani garnu hhuncchha”. (news item in the Gorakhapatra)

3. “mero chhoro profesar hune-chan ani ma hunechhu profesa-rsaahebko baakbu”. (from a novel)

In spoken Nepali, too, this form is used if the speaker is making an assertion, a promise, a threat or a prophecy.

**Examples:**

ma timilaai sakdo maddat dinechhu I’ll give you all possible help.

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
haami dui ghan Taapachhi aunechhau. timi Thik paarera basa.

We’ll come after two hours. Get ready.

yo kaam aaja sakenau bhane timilaai ma paisaa dine chhaina.

I won’t pay you if you don’t finish this work today.

yasari juwaa khelna thalyo bhane, timi chhiTai kangaal hunechhau.

If you go on gambling like this, you will be a bankrupt soon.

bhaneko maana, natra pachhi dukkha paaunechhau.

Listen to what I’m saying, otherwise you’ll suffer later.

---

Future Indefinite Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUN:</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE:</th>
<th>NEGATIVES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>jaanechhu</td>
<td>jaanechhaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>jaanechhas</td>
<td>jaanechhainas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>jaanechha</td>
<td>jaanchhaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hami (haru)</td>
<td>jaanechhau</td>
<td>jaanechhainaũ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi (haru)</td>
<td>jaanechhau</td>
<td>jaanechhainau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>jaanechhan</td>
<td>jaanechhainan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaañ (haru)</td>
<td>jaanuhunechha</td>
<td>jaanuhunechhaina</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I’ll go/I won’t go.
You’ll go/You won’t go.
He’ll go/He won’t go.
We’ll go/We won’t go.
You’ll go/You won’t go.
They’ll go/They won’t go.

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
LESSON 38

VOCABULARY

- mantraalaya — ministry
- sachib — secretary
- sikchhyaa — education

(a)

1. hijo tapaaile kati baje bhaat khaanu bho ? paune dash baje khaaë. What time did you eat yesterday ? I ate at quarter to ten.

2. khaane bittikai ke garnu bhayo? What did you do immediately after eating ? I went to school right after eating.

3. iskulmaa pugdaa kati bajeko thiyo ? dash baji sakeko thiyo. What time was it when you arrived at school ? It was past ten O’clock.

4. iskulmaa pugne bittikai ke garnubhayo ? iskulmaa pugne bittikati klaasmaa I went to class right after arriving at school.

(b)

1. hijo diuso ke garnubhayo ? What did you do yesterday afternoon ? I went to Patan.

   paaTan gaeko thië.

2. kina ? Why ?

   sinemaa herne bichæar thiyo. I wanted to see the movie.
3. hernubhayo ta ?
   naherikana pharkē.

4. kin ta ?
   bhiD rahechha, tyas kaaran
   tikaT paaiena.

Did you see it ?
I came back without seeing it.

Why ?
It was crowded so tickets
were not available.

(c)

1. hijo dinbhari kahāa jaanu-
   bhaekko thiyo ?
   sikchhyaa mantraalayamaa
   gaeko thiē.

Where were you the whole day
yesterday ?
I was at the Ministry of Educa-

tion.

2. ke kaam thiyo ra ?
   sachibjyulaai bheTne kaam
   thiyo.

What did you have to do there ?
I had to see the Secretary.

3. bheT bhayo ta ?
   bhet ta bhayo tara chaar baje

Did you see him ?
I saw him but only at four O’clock.

4. wahāa naaunjel ke garnubhayo
   ta ?
   wahāa naaunjel gaph garera
   base.

What did you do until he came ?
I sat and talked until he came.

**Grammar Notes**

1. /na khaikana/etc.

   Without eating, without seeing, without asking etc. This form is made by/ma/ the
root of the verb /ikana/. Study the following phrases along with their root verbs.

   nuhaaunu       nanuhaaikana
   paDhnu         napaDhikana
   dinu           nadiikana
The following are made in a lishly different way.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>past tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hāasnu</td>
<td>nahāasikana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>umaalnu</td>
<td>naumaalikana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garnu</td>
<td>nagarikana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bolnu</td>
<td>nabolikana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kinnu</td>
<td>nakinikana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leknnu</td>
<td>nalekhikana</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. **ne-bittikai**

\[
\text{naa-sath} \quad \text{as soon as}
\]

u aaune bittikai tapaailaai khabar garchhu. I’ll let you know as soon as he comes.
bhaat paaknaasaath malaai bhana. Let me know as soon as the food is ready.

na { naaunjel naaesamma } until

Both of these forms are used.

maaik naaunjel maile uslaai parkhé. I waited for Mike until he came back.
tapaal khaaunjel ma parkhan chhu. I’ll wait until you eat.

**Paropakaar**, it means benevolence, charity, kindness. Here—name of a school.

raastriya rangashaala The national stadium.

harukka hunu (garnu)— Lit to be at the point of death. Figuratively this means to be really crazy about something.

**Compound Verbs**

dash baji sakeko thiyo. It was past ten O’clock.
u gaisakyo. He has already gone.
ma lyaaaidialaa. I’ll bring for you.

In the above examples ‘baji sakeko’, ‘gaisakyo’ and ‘lyaaidialaa’ are compound verbs because they are formed by two different verbs. Below are given some compound verbs with examples.

1. verb dinu

maile uslaai timro khabar I gave him your message.
bhanidië
usko chiTTThi lekhidiyau ta ? Did you write the letter for him ?

2. verb parnu

malaai aajai ajaanuparchha. I have to go today.
rughaa laagyo bhane aaraam You should rest when you have cold.
garnuparchha.

3. verb haalnu

ma gaihaalchhu. I am leaving right now.
This verb form is used to show immediately.

4. verb saknu

uniharu gaisake. They have already left.
usle kaam paaisakyo. He has already found a job.
timile yo kitaab pADhisakyau ? Have you finished reading this book ?
LESSION 37

VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bes</td>
<td>good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bich</td>
<td>middle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chheu</td>
<td>side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lagiraakhnu</td>
<td>bring along</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>naumaaleko</td>
<td>unboiled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oraalo</td>
<td>downhill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ras</td>
<td>juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taamaang</td>
<td>Tamang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tirthasthaan</td>
<td>holy place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ukaalo</td>
<td>uphill</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a)

1. dui haptaa aghi tapaa! kahāa jaanu bhaeko thiyo ?
   I went to Pokhara.

2. pokharaa kasto rahechha ?
   pokharaa nikaai raamro rahechha. I though it was very beautiful.

3. phewaa taaltira pani jaanu bhayo ?
   I saw lots of restaurants beside the lake and a temple in the middle.

4. tyahāa ke ke rahechha ?
   I saw lots of restaurants beside the lake and a temple in the middle.

5. taalmaa pauDi pani khelnu bhyao ki ?
   No, I didn’t.

(b)

1. hijo beluki kun resTuraamaa khaanaa khaanu bhayo ?
   At the Om.
2. tyahā kasto khaanā paaine rahechha?
tibbati ra inDiyān.

3. piune kuraa ke ke paine rahechha
biyar, koko kolaa ra phalphul ko ras paaine rahechha.

4. resTuraa kasto laagyo ta?
khāanāa ta miTho tara Thaaū bhane ali phohor rahechha.

What kind of food is available there?
Tibetan and Indian.

What is available to drink?
Beer, Coke and fruit juice.

What do you think of the restuarant
The food was good but the place seemed a bit dirty to me.

1. bihaana kahā gaekaa thiyau?
saaththiko gaharmaa.

2. saathisanaga bheT bhayo?
ahā, DaakTarkomaa gaechha.

3. kina ra? ke bhaechha?
hijodekhi usko peT dukhechha

4. kasari peT duhhe chha?
saaththiko gharmaa bhoj khaana gaechha ra naumaaleko paani khaaechha.

Where were you this morning?
At my friend’s house.

Did you see your friend?
No, he had already gone to the doctor’s.

Why? What happened to him?
His stomach has been hurting since yesterday.

How come his stomach hurts?
He went to his friend’s house and drank unboiled water.

Comprehension:

gaeko mahināa ma ra meraa tin saathiharu gosaaikunDatīra
ghumna gaekaa thiyāū. yo nepaalko euTaa tirthasthaan ho. gosaaikundDa jaana ra auna jammāa dui haptaa laagdo rahechha. yoThaaū karib panDhra hajaar phiT mathi euTaa ramaailo Thaaūmaa rahechha. tyahāa jaana dherai ukaalo oraalo pardo rahechha. baaTomaah dherai
jaso taamaang gaañ rahechhan. taamaang bhaepani uniharu nepaali boldaa rahechhan. baaToko kunai kunai gaaumaa khaanaa paaido rahechha, kunaimaa napaaine rahechha. tyasaile kehi khaanaa lagi rakhnu bes hådo rahechha.

QUESTIONS:-
1. gaeko mahinnaa ma ra meraa saathiharu kahaa gaekaa thiyaan ?
2. tyahaa jaana aauna kati laagdo rahechha ?
3. yo Thaaan kati hajaar PhiT maathi rahechha ?
4. kasto Thaaumaa rahechha ?
5. tyahaa jaane baaTo kasto rahechha ?
6. baaTomaas kun gaañ pardo rahechha ?
7. taamaang bhaepani uniharu kun bhaasha bolnaa rahechhan ?
8. baaToko gaaumaa khaana paaine rahechha ?
7. ke garnu bes hådo rahechha ?
10. tapaal gosaaikundDa jaanu bhaeko chha ?

GRAMMAR NOTES
1. See lesson 25 for the use of 'rahechha'
2. In the following examples or in the sentences in the above lesson 'bhane' means 'as for

kaarThmaanDumaa tarkaari sasto rahechha tara maasu bhane dherai mahago rahechha.
ma khasiko maasu khaanchu.
kukhuraako bhane khaanna.
I found that in Kathmandu vegetables are cheap, as for meat, it’s very expensive.
I eat goat meat. As for chichen meat, I don’t eat it.

Unknown Past

taam DaakTarkomaa gaechha This implies that the fact that Tam had gone to the doctor’s has just been known to the speaker. This tense form is known
as Unknown Past and is very common in Nepali, like ‘rahchha’.

Study the following examples:

hijo raati paani parechha.
I see that it rained last night.

u ta hijai pokharaa gaechha.
I found out just now that he left for Pokhara yesterday.

biraalole sabai dudh khaechha.
Oh. look! The cat drank all the milk.
tarkaari piro bhaechha.
I find the vegetables hot.
DaaDaamaa hiu parechha.
I see that it snowed over the hill.
timi ta assadhyai dublaechhau.
I notice that you have become very thin.

suneu ! raamko bahiniko bihe bhaechha.
Did you hear that Ram’s sister got married?
bil ta amerikaa pharkechha.
I have just heard that Bill returned to the States.
kina, ke bhaechha ?
Why, what happened?
usko baa bitnu bhaechha.
I hear that his father died.
Vocabulary

abasya for sure, certainly mihenat garnu to work hard
abelaa late milansaar friendly
baani habit paThaaunu to send
khojnu to look for patra letter
khusi paarnu to please rojnu to choose
maagnu to ask for saruwaa transfer

(a)

1. timi nepaalmaa aaeko kati bhayo ?
   tin mahinaa jati bhayo. How long has it been since you came to Nepal ?
   About three months.

2. timile kina nepaalmaa aauna rojyau ?
   nepaal raamro chha bhanera sunekole. Why did you choose to come to Nepal ?
   Because I'd heard that Nepal is beautiful.

3. tapaaAllai koriyaaamaa paThaaeko Would you have gone if they had
   bhae jaanu hunthyo ?
   malaai koriyaaamaa paThaaeko bhae jaannathë. sent you to Korea ?
   No, if they had sent me to Korea, I wouldn't have gone.

4. kina ?
   koriyen bhaashaa sikna garho hunchha bhanne sunekole. Why ?
   Because I've heard that it's difficult to learn Korean.

5. phijimaa paThaaeko bhae ni ?
   tyahää paThaaeko bhae ta jaanthe. What if they had sent you to Fiji ?
   I would have gone if they had sent me there.
1. Jimji, tapaallaai tapaalko gaa kasto laagyo ?
   malaaai mero gaaū asaadhyai man I like my village very much.
   paryo.

2. tyahākaa maanchheharu ni ?
   uniharu pani ekdam milansaar rahechhan.
   How about the people there ?
   I found them also very friendly.

3. uniharu milansaar nabhaeko
   bhae tapaal ke garnu hunthyo ?
   ma raamro kaam garera uniharulaai khusi paarna koshis garthē.
   What would you have done if they weren't friendly ?
   I would have tried to please them by working well.

4. tyahāa kunai kaam nai nabhaeko
   bhae ?
   mero aphismaa saruwaa maagi patra lekhhe.
   How about if there wasn't any thing to do ?
   I would have written to my office asking for a transfer.

COMPREHNSION:

(a) hijo sinemaa herna bhanera ma sinemaa halmaa gae. tara shani-
baaar bhaekole asaadhyai bhiD rahechha, TikaT paaiena. 'black' maa khojeko bhae ki bihaanai gaeko bhae paainthyo hola. malaaai 'black' maa TikaT lina man laagena. tyasaile sinemaa naherikanai pharkē.

QUESTIONS:–

1. hijo kahāa jaanu bhayo ?
2. kina ?
3. TikaT paaiyo ta ?
4. kina paaiyena?
5. bihaanai gaeko bhae paainthyo?
6. ‘black’ maa kineko bhae ni?
7. tapaalle ‘black’ maa linu bhayo ta?
8. sinemaa naherikanai pharkanu bhayo?

(b) raambahadurko jāāch arko haptaadekhi shuru hunchha. jāāch najikai aaekole u aaja bholi dinbhari ra raati pani abelaa samma paDhchha. pahiledekhi usle raamrosanga paDheko bhae ahile uslaai yeti dherai mihenat garnu pardainathyo. tara ke garne? raambahadurko baani yastai chha. pohor saal u phel bhayo. iskulmaa dindinai gaeko bhae ra guruharule paDhaaeko sabai paTh raamro sanga paDheko bhae u phel hunnathyo, abasya pass hunthyo.

QUESTIONS:
1. raam bahaadurko jāāch kahile dekhi suru hunchha?
2. u aaja bholi kina dherai mihenat garchha?
3. pahile dekhi raamrosanga paDheko bhae uslaai ahile yeti dherai mihenat garnu parthyo?
4. pohor saal u paass bhayo ki phel bhayo?
5. ke gareko bahae u phhor saal pass hunthyo?

GRAMMAR NOTES
1. The ‘...ekobhae’ is a conditional structure indicating that the likelihood of the condition being fulfilled is impossible.

Examples:

masanga paisaa bhaeko bhae If I had money I would have
dherai saamaan kinthē. bought a lot of things.

(I didn’t have money so I didn’t but many things.)

or

(I wish I could buy things but I don’t have any money)

2. ‘sinemaa herna bhanera’. Note the use of ‘bhanera’. It does not mean anything here. One can simply say ‘sinemaa herna’. 

188
Some Nepali Idioms

haawaa birgranu – to go crazy
usko haawaa bigreko chha – He has gone crazy.
hawaa khuskanu – to go crazy
chitta bujhnu – to be satisfied
chitta dukhnu – (of feelings) to be hurt
ääkhaa chhalnu – to deceive

ääkhaa chimlanu 1. to be indifferent
                      2. to die
                      3. to ponder
                      4. not to think of the result

arti dinu – to advise
baadhaa dinu – to distrurb
chhori dinu – to give one’s daughter, ie. in marriage
Dhog dinu  to salute
dos dinu – to blame
dukkha dinu – to pester
ishsaaraa dinu – to hint
ääkhaamaa haale pani na bijhaaunu – to be an extremely nice person
dikka garnu – to bother
hel chakryaal garnu – to neglect
hit garnu – to do good
khissi garnu – to ridicule
sekhi garnu – to boast
sriganesh garnu – to start

haat haalnu 1. to meddle in
                      2. to undertake

baaTo hernu – to wait
haat hernu – to read hand (palm)
dikka hunu  to be fed up
ek mukh hunu – to unite
naak jaanu – to be disgraced
paramdhaam jaanu – to die
aDkal kaaTnu – to guess
din kaaTnu – to spend time
dukkhakaTnu – to suffer
kuraa kaaTnu – to interrupt, to refuse

Taap kasnu – to run away

aalu khaanu – to fail
ghus khaanu – to take bribe
gotaa khaanu – to suffer
haawaa khaanu – to fail, to pass away

kiriyyaa khaanu – to swear
kuraa khaanu – to agree
silTimur hhaanu – to die

khoiro khannu – to harass

bhed kholnu – to disclose
naak khumchyaanunu – to be unsatisfied

haat laagnu – to fall into one’s hands

mukh laagnu – to answer back impudently

pachhi laagnu – to follow
udass laagnu – to be depressed

ääkhaar laagnu – to caste eyes upon

adhyaaro mukh laaunu – to look unhappy
chitta laaunu – to attend to
pattaa laaunu – to find out, discover
dhaak laaunu – to brag

kuraa laaunu – to tell tales
naali beli laaunu – to furnish details
ThaaDo ghaaTi laaunu – to drink alcoholic liquor

haat lamkaaunu – to steal
mekh maarnu – to defeat, to bring to one’s senses
haat paarnu – to gain possession of
chaal paaunu – to come to know
chet paaunu – to become wise
chhoroo paaunu – to give birth to a son
bhar parnu – to depend
chiso pasnu – to suspect
taalumaa aalu phalnu – to have huge benefits without doing much
mukh pharkaaunu – to answer back insolently
mukh phulaaunu – to be angry
ris phernu – to avenge
sekhi puryaaidinu – to give the devil his due
kaan samaatnu – to take a solemn oath not to do something
mukh samhaalnu – to be careful in what one is saying
mukh siunu – to be quiet
khuTTa taannu – to die
kulelam Thoknu – to run away
aakaasko phal – an impossibility
gobar ganesh – stupid fellow, imbecile
Adverbial Expressions:

1. nithrukka bhijnu — to be wet through and through
2. bhusukka birsanu — to forget completely
3. ghuTukka nilnu — to swallow with a gulp
4. jhanakka risaunu — to get furiously angry; to lose one's temper
5. Tuplukka aaipugnu — to come unexpectedly; to come at the right moment
6. Thasakaa parnu — to be proud; to be unwilling
7. khutrukka marnu — to die instantly
8. jhasanga jhaskanu — to be startled
9. musukka hāsnu — to smile
10. pulukka hernu — to look askance; to look coyly at
11. chasakka chaskanu — to have a sharp pain
12. jurukka uThnu — to rise smartly
13. thapakka raakhnu — to put quietly
14. paTakka nabolnu — not to speak at all
15. dhapakka balnu — to blaze up
16. hurkukka hunu — to be extremely desirous of
17. phurukka parnu — to be delighted
18. talakka Talkanu — to shine brightly
19. pharakka pharkanu — to turn abruptly
20. jhaDanga risaunnu — to lose one's temper
21. chharlanga dekhinu — to be seen clearly
22. gamakka parnu — to feel self-sufficient
23. TuluTulu hernu — to look fixedly
24. chaTakka chhoDnu — to give up something abruptly
25. kapaakap khaanu — to swallow right down
26. akamakka parnu — to be dumbfounded

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
27. dhuru dhuru runu — to weep profusely
28. dhurukka ruwaaunu — to be a source of great trouble
29. laryaang lurung garnu — to saunter, loiter
30. khuru khuru garnu — to do steadily
31. suTukka bhannu — to tell secretly
32. Thikka parnu — to get ready
33. Thikka vaarnu — to make ready

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
Common Proverbs

chaltikaa ukhaanharu

1. raato raamro, guliyo miTho.
   Red is beautiful, sweet is delicious.
2. manako baha kasailai nakaha.
   Do not publish your troubles.
3. agulTole haaneko kukur bijuli chamkadaa tarsanchha.
   A dog struck by brand trembles at a flash of lightening.
4. hatpatko kaam latpat.
   A work done in a hurry ends in disarray.
5. murkhadekhi daiba pani Daraaãchha.
   Even a God is afraid of the fool.
6. waraalo laageko baaghlaai baachhaale pani khedchha.
   A run down tiger is chased even by a calf.
7. khaane mukhaai jungaale chhekdaina.
   The moustache does not stop the mouth eating.
8. jastaalaai tastai DhiDolaai nistai.
   Tit for tat.
9. siyo chornele bhTTaa phorchha.
   He who steals a needle will break open a wall.
10. maagnelaaai taato bhaat.
    A beggar should not be a chooser.
11. baãdarko haatmaa nariwal.
    A coconut in a monkey’s hand.
12. kaaTeko ghãaumaa nun chuk.
    Adding insult to injury.
13. bhãagyamaa bhae goru pani byãaãchha.
    If you are lucky, even your ox will give birth.
14. haattiko mukhmaa jiraa.
    A drop in the ocean.
15. naãchna jaandaina aagan TeDho.
    A bad carpenter quarrels with his tools.
16. हागी सक्यो बाटो देख्यो।
   After death the doctor.
17. मुख्राह राम राम बगलिमा छहुराह।
   A honey tongue a heart of a gall.
18. जस्तो रोप्यो उस्तै पहल्च्छ।
   As you sow so you reap.
19. ब्हेदाटा ब्हेदासाङ्गा बाक्राहार बाक्रासाङ्गा।
   Birds of the same feather flock together.
20. साउताको रिसले पोको काङ्ख्रामा मुत्नै।
   Burn one’s house to frighten away the mice.
21. चहरो पाउने काहिले काहिले भोटो सुने आहिले।
   Counting the chickens before they are hatched.
22. ग्हाटी हेरी हार्द निल्नु।
   Cut your coat according to your cloth.
23. देस गुनाको भेस कपाल गुनाको केश।
   Do in Rome as the Romans do.
24. च्हान्न गेदि सबै मेरी च्हाँन गेदि सबै तेठी।
   Fair weather friends.
25. मारेको बाघहको जुंग्हारा तान्ने।
   Flogging a dead horse.
26. आूलो द्लाए दुधल्नो निल्ने।
   Give him an inch and he will ask for a mile.
27. आफ्नु भालो ता जगत भालो।
   Good mind good find.
28. नाहुनु भौंदा कानो मामा निको।
   Something is better than nothing.
29. पानिमा बासि गोहि सागा बाईराब्हाब।
   It is hard to live in Rome and strife with Pope.
30. जस्तो बोट उस्तै पहल।
   Like father like son.
31. मा ताक्च्छू मुड्धो बाँचरो ताक्च्छ्या ग्वाडो।
   Man proposes God disposes.
32. जस्को सक्ति उस्को भक्ति।
   Might is right.
33. achaanoko pir khukurile haandaina.  
No one knows the weight of another's burden.

24. aaphno aangko bhalsi nadekhne, arkaako aangko jumraa dekhne.  
No one looks to his own fault.

35. ek dinko paahuna miTho miTho khaa, dui dinko paahunaa jaso 
taso khaa, tin dinko paahunaa jataa sukai jaa.  
One day a guest, two days a guest, three days a pest.

36. kasaiko boli kasaiko gaali.  
One man's meat is another man's poison.

37. lobhale laabh laabhle bilaap.  
Penny wise and pound foolish.

38. maukaa aaachha parkhadaina.  
Time and tide wait for no man.

39. ek pantha do kaaj.  
To kill two birds with one stone.

40. dherai khaae ghiu pani amilo hunchha.  
Too much of anything is bad.

41. iswar daahinaa bhae kasko ke laagchha.  
When God is kind all are favorable.

42. saas hunjel aas.  
While there is life thre is hope.

43. maamaaki ghoDi meri hi hi.  
To be proud of another's property.
Below is a list of works used in this book. The number in brackets refer to the lesson in which the word first appears.

(a)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaitabaar (11)</td>
<td>Sunday</td>
<td>aaja (4)</td>
<td>today</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aākhaa (12)</td>
<td>eye</td>
<td>aalu (8)</td>
<td>potato</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aamaa (2)</td>
<td>mother</td>
<td>āāp (6)</td>
<td>mango</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aaphno (3)</td>
<td>own</td>
<td>aaraam garnu (10)</td>
<td>to rest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aaune (11)</td>
<td>coming, next</td>
<td>aaunu (3)</td>
<td>to come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aba (7)</td>
<td>now</td>
<td>aDhaai(20)</td>
<td>two and half</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agaaDi (10)</td>
<td>in front of</td>
<td>aghi (7)</td>
<td>since, ago</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aglaa, aglo 1(2)</td>
<td>tall</td>
<td>alchhi (10)</td>
<td>lazy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliali (6)</td>
<td>a little, a few</td>
<td>amilo (2)</td>
<td>sour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anchal (18)</td>
<td>zone</td>
<td>anDaa (13)</td>
<td>egg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anekaā (37)</td>
<td>several</td>
<td>ani (4)</td>
<td>and then</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anushaashan (36)</td>
<td>discipline</td>
<td>assadhyai (10)</td>
<td>extremely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asanTol (5)</td>
<td>asanTole (street in Kathmandu)</td>
<td>asti (11)</td>
<td>day before yesterday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atyanta (34)</td>
<td>very much</td>
<td>audhi (32)</td>
<td>extremely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ausadhi (10)</td>
<td>medicine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>baa (2)</td>
<td>father</td>
<td>bahini (3)</td>
<td>younger sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baahira (3)</td>
<td>out, outside</td>
<td>bazaar (4)</td>
<td>market</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baalnu (7)</td>
<td>to light</td>
<td>bajai (17)</td>
<td>grand nmother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bheTnu (23)</td>
<td>to meet</td>
<td>baje (4)</td>
<td>O’clock (stating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baaremaa (28)</td>
<td>about</td>
<td></td>
<td>/asking time of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baas (32)</td>
<td>shelter</td>
<td></td>
<td>an event)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baaTa (4)</td>
<td>from</td>
<td>bajyo (8)</td>
<td>O’clock</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

197
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nepali Word</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>baaaTo</td>
<td>road, path, trail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bachchha</td>
<td>child, young ones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baDhi</td>
<td>more, better</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>badmaas</td>
<td>mischievous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bahaal</td>
<td>to rent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bATTa (5)</td>
<td>packet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>batti</td>
<td>light, lamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bechnu (27)</td>
<td>to sell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bekaar (27)</td>
<td>jobless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belaayat (16)</td>
<td>England</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belukaa (4)</td>
<td>evening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhaarDaa (28)</td>
<td>rent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhai (3)</td>
<td>younger brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhaansaa garnu (253)</td>
<td>to eat a meal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhaarshaa (8)</td>
<td>language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhaat (17)</td>
<td>cooked rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhayo</td>
<td>became</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhiD (27)</td>
<td>crowd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhitra (3)</td>
<td>in, inside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhoklaagnu (10)</td>
<td>to feel hungry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhoj (25)</td>
<td>feast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bholi (4)</td>
<td>tomorrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bihaana (4)</td>
<td>morning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhuuraa (25)</td>
<td>fingerlings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nepali Word</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>baliyo</td>
<td>strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banaaunu</td>
<td>to make</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banda garnu (2)</td>
<td>to close, to shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baneko</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>barsha</td>
<td>year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bas (7)</td>
<td>bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bidaa (4)</td>
<td>holiday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bidesi (27)</td>
<td>foreigner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bidyaarthi (0)</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bihaa (13)</td>
<td>marriage, wedding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhaanaako (8)</td>
<td>morning meal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhobaar (11)</td>
<td>Thursday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bigranu</td>
<td>to be broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bigyaan (26)</td>
<td>science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bish (35)</td>
<td>poison</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bisaya (27)</td>
<td>subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biu</td>
<td>seed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bokaa (25)</td>
<td>uncastrated male</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhoj (8)</td>
<td>goat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>budhabaar (11)</td>
<td>to speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>byabahaar (26)</td>
<td>Wednesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>byawasthaa (37)</td>
<td>treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charpi (21)</td>
<td>latrine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cha (1)</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chaaina (2)</td>
<td>is not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chhan (3)</td>
<td>are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chharlangai (25)</td>
<td>clearly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

(c)
chaar (3) four
chaDhnu (24) to climb
chakki (18) tablet
chalaunu (22) to drive
charaa (12) bird
chamchhaa (16) spoon
chhoTo (12) short (opp. of long)
chhuTTi (24) vacation
chiDiyaa khaanaa (20) zoo
chij (5) cheese
chin (18) China
chini (3) sugar

chhetra (37) region, area
chheu (32) side
chhiTo (21) fast, early
chhoDidinu to leave
chhoraa (13) son
chhori daughter
chiniyaa (17) Chinese
chinnu (23) to know, to recognize
chiso cold
chiTThi (7) letter
chiyya (2) tea
churoT (5) cigarette

daai (3) brother (older)
DaakTar (23) doctor
daal bhaat (4) lentils and cooked rice
daayaa (12) right (opp. to left)
dahi (17) yogurt
dakchhin (18) south
Dar laagnu (24) to be afraid
das (4) ten
dasääi (25) Durga puja festival
Dat pen (6) ball point pen
DeDh (20) one and half
dekhi (6) from
dekhaaunu (23) to show
dekhinu (24) to be seen
dekhnu (8) to see
dherai jaso (7) mostly, usually
dhilo (21) slow, late
Dhokaa (2) door
dhumdhaam (10) intensively
dhunu (22) pompously
to wash
dikka laagnu (27) to feel sad
din (7) day
din bhari (17) to give
dinu (10) stool
disaa (10) to have diarrhoea
disaa laagnu
diäso (4) day time
dublo (21) (afternoon)
thin, slim
dubai (14) both
dudh (4) milk
dui (3) two
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nepali Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deraa (4)</td>
<td>apartment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desh (18)</td>
<td>country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dhaaro (21)</td>
<td>water tap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dharma (25)</td>
<td>religion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dherai (6)</td>
<td>many, a lot of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ek (3)</td>
<td>one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ek chhin (22)</td>
<td>a moment, a while.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ekdam (14)</td>
<td>very much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaai (12)</td>
<td>cow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaajaa (27)</td>
<td>marijuana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaarho (20)</td>
<td>difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaarho laagnu (3)</td>
<td>to find difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaaã (7)</td>
<td>village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaeko (33)</td>
<td>last (as in past)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaiDaa (6)</td>
<td>a brand of cigarette (lit. rhinoceros)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dukhnu (10)</td>
<td>to ache, to have pain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>durgaa (25)</td>
<td>one of the Hindu Goddesses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ekai (21)</td>
<td>same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eklai (10)</td>
<td>alone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ek paTak (23)</td>
<td>once</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaai (12)</td>
<td>cow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaajaa (27)</td>
<td>marijuana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaarho (20)</td>
<td>difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaarho laagnu (3)</td>
<td>to find difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaaã (7)</td>
<td>village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaeko (33)</td>
<td>last (as in past)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaiDaa (6)</td>
<td>a brand of cigarette (lit. rhinoceros)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>galaãchaa (13)</td>
<td>carpet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garmi (21)</td>
<td>hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garnu (1)</td>
<td>to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gate (17)</td>
<td>date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ghaDi (7)</td>
<td>watch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ghanTaa (8)</td>
<td>hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ghanTaagar</td>
<td>Clock-Tower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ghar (1)</td>
<td>home, house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ghoDe jaatraa (10)</td>
<td>horse racing ceremony</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ghumnu (24)</td>
<td>to roam around</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami (7)</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haat (19)</td>
<td>hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hajaaraã (30)</td>
<td>thousands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hijo (0)</td>
<td>yesterday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hocho (12)</td>
<td>short (as opp. to tall)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word</td>
<td>Mean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hajur (1)</td>
<td>yes (Polite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haraaunu (24)</td>
<td>to lose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harek (30)</td>
<td>every</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haptaa (7)</td>
<td>week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hawaaipatra (30)</td>
<td>aerogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hernu (7)</td>
<td>to look</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ho (1)</td>
<td>is (definitive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hāDera (18)</td>
<td>on foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itihaas (27)</td>
<td>history</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jaannu (14)</td>
<td>to know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jaanu (3)</td>
<td>to go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jamaa (5)</td>
<td>total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>janasankhya (37)</td>
<td>population</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jangali (35)</td>
<td>wild</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jaslaai pani (32)</td>
<td>to any one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jasto (21)</td>
<td>like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jati (18)</td>
<td>about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jattikai (21)</td>
<td>like (that)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jhanDai (14)</td>
<td>almost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaagati (8)</td>
<td>lemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaslo (1)</td>
<td>black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaam (7)</td>
<td>work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaam garnu (15)</td>
<td>to work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaapi (1)</td>
<td>notebook</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
kaarkhaanaa (13) factory
kaaTaa (19) fork
kaaryaalaya (36) office
kaaTnu (25) to cut
kahaa (1) where
kahile (7) when
kahile dekhi (7) how long, since when
kahile kahi (8) sometimes
kahile pani (15) never
kalam (1) pen
kamaaunu (22) to earn, to make money
kamij (1) shirt
kapaal (12) hair of the head
kaphi (4) coffee
karooD (37) ten millions
kasari (7) how
kasko (1) whose
kasto (1) what color
kina (4) why
kinaar (24) beach
kinabhane (25) because
kinmel garnu (22) to shop
kisaan (25) farmer
kisim (27) kind, type
kitaab (1) book
klaas (4) class
ko (3) who
ko ko (4) who (plural)
laakh (37) one hundred thousands
lekhnu (4) to write

kehi
keraa (7) banana
khaajaa (8) snack
khaali (22) empty, vacant
khaam (6) envelope
khaanaa (14) food, meal
khaanu (2) to eat, to drink
khairo (12) brown
khalti (3) pocket
khasi (26) goat
khel (14) game
to play
to look for
to open
very (emphatic)
goat
knife

khusi paarnu (40) to please
ki (4) or
ko laagi (17) for
koThaa (11) room
krishi (37) agriculture
kukhuraa (20) chicken
kun (3) which
kunni (13) don't know
kyaalenDar (4) calendar

laakh (37) one hundred thousands

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nepali Word</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laamo (12)</td>
<td>long</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lagidinu (32)</td>
<td>to take for some one</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lagiraakhnu</td>
<td>(37) bring along</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linu (2)</td>
<td>to take</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lugaa (17)</td>
<td>dress</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lyaaadinu (6)</td>
<td>to bring for</td>
<td>someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ma (2)</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maa (3)</td>
<td>at, in, on</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maachhhaa (35)</td>
<td>fish</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maadhyamik</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biddyaalaya (35)</td>
<td>secondary</td>
<td>school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maagnu (40)</td>
<td>to ask for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maanabiki (36)</td>
<td>humanities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shastra</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maanchhe (25)</td>
<td>man</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maannu (25)</td>
<td>to follow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maarnu (35)</td>
<td>to kill</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maasu (8)</td>
<td>meat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maatra (5)</td>
<td>only</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maddat</td>
<td>help, assistance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mausam (21)</td>
<td>weather</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meraa</td>
<td>mine (plural)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mero (1)</td>
<td>my</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mihenat garnu (40)</td>
<td>to work hard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ma (2)</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maa (3)</td>
<td>at, in, on</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maachhhaa (35)</td>
<td>fish</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maadhyamik</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biddyaalaya (35)</td>
<td>secondary</td>
<td>school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maagnu (40)</td>
<td>to ask for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maanabiki (36)</td>
<td>humanities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shastra</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maanchhe (25)</td>
<td>man</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maannu (25)</td>
<td>to follow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maarnu (35)</td>
<td>to kill</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maasu (8)</td>
<td>meat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maatra (5)</td>
<td>only</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maddat</td>
<td>help, assistance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mausam (21)</td>
<td>weather</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meraa</td>
<td>mine (plural)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mero (1)</td>
<td>my</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mihenat garnu (40)</td>
<td>to work hard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>naam (1)</td>
<td>name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>najaane (3)</td>
<td>will not go</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>najik (18)</td>
<td>near</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>naa (7)</td>
<td>nine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>naumaaleko (34)</td>
<td>unboiled</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nayaâ (17)</td>
<td>new</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

203

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
najikai (18) nearby ni (1) and how about
naksaa (18) map nibhaaunu (7) to turn off (light)
namaste (1) hello, good bye, nikkai (24) very (emphatic)
greeting niko hunu (34) to be well, to be cured
nambari (30) a hundred rupee note nira (3) near
napaDhnc (4) will not read nuhaaunu (22) to bathe
naraakhnc (4) will not put nyaano (27) warm

oraalo downhill

(o)

(p)
pāāch (4) five parchha (6) it costs
paainchha (5) is available pardaina neg. of parchha
paakeT (6) packet pariwaar (13) family
paalnu (35) to raise parsī (11) day after
paani (2) water pasal (4) store
paani parnu (21) to rain paTak (18) times
da to get paThaaunu to send
paani (2) water paani (21) to rain
paushchim (18) west paThaaunu to send
bachhīs (7) twenty five patra
pachhaaDi (18) behind patrikaa (27) newspaper
paDhnaunu (8) to teach pauDi khclnu (23) to swim
paDhnu (1) to read paune (4) quarter to
pahulo (25) first paune saat quarter to seven
paisaa (6) pice pesaa (37) occupation
paTinu (32) to lie down peT (10) stomach
pani (2) also phalṭhul (5) fruit
pharkaaunu (22) to return pharak (21) different
something pohor saal (24) last year
pokhari (35) pond

204

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
pharkanu (4) to return
pheri (8) tai
phohor (7) dirty
phul (5) egg, flower
phursad (26) free time
phuT ball (4) football
pisaab garnu (22) to urinate
prasiddha (24) famous
praTisat (37) percent
pugnu (16) to be enough
pugnu (27) to arrive
puja (25) worship
puraano (17) old
purba (18) east

ra (8) and
raaj maarga (37) high way
raajya (3) state
raakhnu (3) to put
raastriya (36) national
raato (3) red
rahar (35) desire
raksi (4) home made spirit
raksi laagnu (17) to get drunk
ramaailo (10) pleasant, scenic
ras (37) juice
rojnu (40) choose
roknu (27) to stop
roTi (11) bread
rusi (36) Russian

saaDhe (6) half (beyond one)
saaDhe das (4) half past ten
saat (4) seven
saaThi (20) sixty
saahuji (5) store keeper
saathi (4) friend
saaTi dinu (35) to change
saaTnu (15) to trade, to change
sabai (12) all
sabbhandaa (21) the most (superlative)
saahuji (5) store keeper
saaThi (20) sixty
saatriya (36) national
saaTnu (15) to trade, to change
sahar (3) town, city
sajaaya (36) punishment
sajilai (30) easily
saknu (30) to be able to
salaad (8) salad
samaaj saastra (30) sicology
samma (4) as far as, until
samudra (24) sea
sanchai (2) fine, well
sanga (15) with
sanibaar (11) Saturday
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sachib (38)</td>
<td>secretary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saDak (18)</td>
<td>road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sadar mukaam (35) district centre</td>
<td>sanskrit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sadhaï (8)</td>
<td>always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sarkaari (38)</td>
<td>government (adj)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saruwaa (40)</td>
<td>transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sattari (20)</td>
<td>seventy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sawaa pãanch</td>
<td>quarter past five</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saya (13)</td>
<td>hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seto (1)</td>
<td>white</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siddhinu (26)</td>
<td>to be finished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sikkhyak (33)</td>
<td>teacher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sikkhyaal (38)</td>
<td>education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siknu (7)</td>
<td>to learn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sinemaa (4)</td>
<td>movie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ta (1)</td>
<td>then</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taal (2)</td>
<td>lake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taalim (30)</td>
<td>training</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taamaang (39)</td>
<td>Tamang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taas (6)</td>
<td>playing cards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taato (5)</td>
<td>hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taauko (12)</td>
<td>head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talab (29)</td>
<td>salary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaaliko</td>
<td>your, yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tep (4)</td>
<td>tape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thaaau (29)</td>
<td>place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thaahaa hunu (7)</td>
<td>to know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thakaai (30)</td>
<td>fatigue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thakaai laagnu (10) to feel tired</td>
<td>thik (6) O. K. alright</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thegaan (23)</td>
<td>certain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sanskrit (28)</td>
<td>sanskrit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sanskriti (36)</td>
<td>culture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saphaa (9)</td>
<td>clean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sarkaari (23)</td>
<td>official</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sisaakalam (6)</td>
<td>pencil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sisi (6)</td>
<td>bottle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sukaaunu (35)</td>
<td>to dry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sombaar (11)</td>
<td>Monday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sukraa (11)</td>
<td>Friday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sundar (30)</td>
<td>beautiful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suninu (25)</td>
<td>to be heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suntalaa (2)</td>
<td>tangerine, orange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sutnu (8)</td>
<td>to sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swayam sewak</td>
<td>volunteer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syaaau (2)</td>
<td>apple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thiyo (11)</td>
<td>was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terha (11)</td>
<td>thirteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ti (2)</td>
<td>those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tibbati (6)</td>
<td>TibetTan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tikaa (25)</td>
<td>red mark worn on the forehead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi (3)</td>
<td>you (familiar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tin (3)</td>
<td>three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trikhaa laagnu (10) to feel thirsty</td>
<td>tis (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tyas din (28)</td>
<td>thirty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tyaspachhi (9)</td>
<td>that day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tyati belaa (28)</td>
<td>then</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turist (16)</td>
<td>tourist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tyattikaa (15)</td>
<td>as much as that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(u)</td>
<td>(w)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(u)</td>
<td>(wahaako)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ue)</td>
<td>his, her, hers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(uhi)</td>
<td>(usle)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(32)</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ukaalo)</td>
<td>the same, the very</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(39)</td>
<td>uso bhae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(umaaleko)</td>
<td>one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(16)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(usko)</td>
<td>(ustai)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>(29)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(wahaako)</td>
<td>(uThaunu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>(34)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(bho)</td>
<td>(uThnu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(8)</td>
<td>(uttar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(18)</td>
<td>(north)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(yo)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
DAYS OF THE WEEK

Sunday                -- aaitabaar
Monday                -- sombaar
Tuesday               -- mangalbaar
Wednesday             -- budhabaar
Thursday              -- bihibaar
Friday                -- shukrabaar
Saturday              -- shanibaar

NAMES OF MONTHS

Nepali months vary from 27 to 32 days in length, and any one month may have a different number of days from year to year. Thus no exact correspondence with the western calendar is possible.

baisaakh -- mid-April to mid-May
jeTh      -- mid-May to mid-June
asaar     -- mid-June to mid-July
saaun     -- mid-July to mid-August
bhadau    -- mid-August to mid-September
asaj      -- mid-September to mid-October
kaattik   -- mid-October to mid-November
mangsir   -- mid-November to mid-December
paush, pus -- mid-December to mid-January
maagh     -- mid-January to mid-February
phaagun   -- mid-February to mid-March
chaitra, chait -- mid-March to mid-April
LAND AREA, WEIGHT, MEASURE,

A. LAND AREA

1. Terai
   1 bighaa  20 kattha
   1 kattha  20 dhur
   1 bighaa  1⅓ acres (approx.)
   2/3 hectre (approx.)

2. Hills, Kathmandu
   8 ropani   1 acre (approx.)

B. WEIGHTS

1. Terai
   1 man     40 ser
   1 ser     4 paau
   1 paau    4 kanuwaa
   1 kanuwaa 5 tolaa
   1 man     82 lb. (approx.)
   1 ser     2 lb. (approx.)

2. Hills
   1 dhaarni 2 bisauli
   1 dhaarni 5 lb. (approx.)

3. Kathmandu
   1 dhaarni 12 paau
   1 dhaarni 5 lb. (approx.)

C. VOLUME

1. Terai
   1 man 20 kattha (paddy

2. Hills, Kathmandu
   1 muri 20 paathi
   1 paathi 8 maanaa
   1 maanaa 10 muThi
   2 maanaa 1 kuruwaa

SPECIAL NUMBERS

Fractions are read as follows:

1/2 aadhaa
1⅓ DeDh, SaaDhe ek
2⅓ aDhaai, saaDhe dui
5/8 pāchkaa muni aaTh

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
## PARTICLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WORD</th>
<th>USE</th>
<th>USED AFTER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>na</td>
<td>emphatic</td>
<td>imperative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ni</td>
<td>emphatic</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>questioning, reminding</td>
<td>noun, pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ta</td>
<td>emphatic</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>contrasting</td>
<td>noun, pronoun, adjective, adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>po</td>
<td>emphatic, contrasting</td>
<td>noun, pronoun, adjective, adverb, participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nai</td>
<td>emphatic</td>
<td>noun, pronoun, adjective, adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ki</td>
<td>questioning</td>
<td>verb, adjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ra</td>
<td>doubtfully</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>refers to something said/ information from the second, or a third person</td>
<td>all parts of speech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chaahí</td>
<td>emphatic and pausing,</td>
<td>noun, pronoun, adjective,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chaahine</td>
<td>contrasting</td>
<td>adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numeral</td>
<td>Nepali</td>
<td>Numeral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>ek</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>dui</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>tin</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>chaar</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>pāāch</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>chha</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>saat</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>aaTh</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>nau</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>das</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>eghaara</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>baarha</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>terha</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>chaudha</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>pandhara</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>sorha</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>satra</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>aThaara</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>unnais, unis</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>bis</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>ekkaais</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>baais</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>teis</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>chaubis</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>pachchis</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>chhabbis</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>sattaais</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>aThThaais</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>unantis, untis</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>tis</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
eksaThThi 81 – ekaaasi
baisaThThi 82 – bayaasi
trisaThThi 83 – triyaasi
chausahaanTh 84 – chauraasi
paísaThThi 85 – pachaasi
chhaisaThThi 86 – chhayaasi
satsaThThi 87 – sattaasi
aThsaThThi 88 – aThaaasi
unansattari 89 – unaanabbe
sattari 90 – nabbe
ekahattar 91 – ekaanabbe
bahattar 92 – bayaanabbe
trihattar 93 – triyaanabbe
chauhattar 94 – chauraanabbe
pachahattai 95 – panchaanabbe
chhahattar 96 – chhayaanabbe
satahattar 97 – santaanabbe
aThahattar 98 – anThaanabbe
unaasi 99 – unaansae
asi 100 – sae, saya

1000 — hajaar
10000 — das hajaar
100000 — laakh
1000000 — das laakh

Nepali Numbers

नौवाँ स्तरमा नेपाली संख्याहरू
## Ordinal Numbers:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st</th>
<th>pahilo</th>
<th>19th</th>
<th>unnisaü</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>dosro</td>
<td>20th</td>
<td>bisaü</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>tesro</td>
<td>21st</td>
<td>ekkaaisaü</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4th</td>
<td>chautho</td>
<td>22nd</td>
<td>baaaisaü</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5th</td>
<td>paachau</td>
<td>23rd</td>
<td>teisaü</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6th</td>
<td>chhaiThaaa</td>
<td>24th</td>
<td>chaubisaü</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7th</td>
<td>saataaü</td>
<td>25th</td>
<td>pachchisaü</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8th</td>
<td>aaThaü</td>
<td>30th</td>
<td>tisaü</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9th</td>
<td>nawaü</td>
<td>40th</td>
<td>chaalisaü</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10th</td>
<td>dasaü</td>
<td>50th</td>
<td>pachaasaü</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11th</td>
<td>eghaaraaü</td>
<td>100th</td>
<td>sayaü</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12th</td>
<td>baaraü</td>
<td>1000th</td>
<td>hajaaraaü</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12th</td>
<td>terhaü</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14th</td>
<td>chaudhaü</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15th</td>
<td>pandhraü</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16th</td>
<td>sorhaü</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17th</td>
<td>saTraü</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18th</td>
<td>aThaaraü</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
General Vocabulary

ANIMALS

bat – chamero  leech – jukaa
bird – charaa  mouse/rat – musaa
dog – kukur  snake – sarpa
fish – maachhaa  tame pig – sungur
fowl/chicken – kukhuraa  wild pig – baadel
frog – bhyaagutaa  pig (improved) – bangur

BODY ACTIVITIES / SENSATIONS

be afraid – Dar laagnu,  chew (food, betel) – chapaanaunu
  – Daraaunu  drink – piunu, khaanu
be angry – risaaunu  eat – khaanu
be asleep – nidaaunu  go to sleep – sutnu
be awake – jaagnu  have a fever – joro aunu
be cold – chiso laagnu  hurt – dukhnu
be hot – taato hunu  itch – chilaanu
be sleepy – nidraa laagnu  listen/hear – sunnu
be tired – thaaknu, thakaai  shiver – saghnu
  laagnu  sniff/smell – chusnu
bite (piece of food) – Toknu  swallow – nilnu
bleed – ragat aaunu  sweat/prespire – pasinaa aunu
blow (a fire) – phuknu  wake up – biajhanu
breathe – saas phernu  watch, see – hernu

BODY PARTS

Adam’s apple – rudra ghanTii  back – piThya
ankle – goli gaaThaa  backbone – DhaaD
arm – paakhuraa  beard – daarhi
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>belly</td>
<td>peT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blood</td>
<td>ragat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>body hair</td>
<td>rau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bone</td>
<td>haaD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breast</td>
<td>chhaati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chest</td>
<td>chhaati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chin</td>
<td>chiuDo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ear</td>
<td>kaan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eye</td>
<td>puhul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elbow</td>
<td>kuhino</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eye</td>
<td>aakhaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>face</td>
<td>mukh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fat</td>
<td>boso</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feather</td>
<td>pwaakh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finger</td>
<td>aulaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finger nail</td>
<td>nang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flesh meat</td>
<td>maasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foot</td>
<td>khuTTaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forehead</td>
<td>nidhaar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hair (of head)</td>
<td>kapaaal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand</td>
<td>haat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>head</td>
<td>Taauko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heel</td>
<td>jaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jaw</td>
<td>knee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knee</td>
<td>leg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leg</td>
<td>mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouth</td>
<td>navel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>navel</td>
<td>neck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neck</td>
<td>nose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nose</td>
<td>palm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palm</td>
<td>rib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rib</td>
<td>shoulder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoulder</td>
<td>skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin</td>
<td>tail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tail</td>
<td>tears</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tears</td>
<td>teeth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teeth</td>
<td>thigh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thigh</td>
<td>throat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throat</td>
<td>thumb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thumb</td>
<td>toes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toes</td>
<td>tongue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tongue</td>
<td>waist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waist</td>
<td>wing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COLOUR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>black</td>
<td>kaalo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blue</td>
<td>nilo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bright</td>
<td>chahakilo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brown</td>
<td>khairo, kailo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean</td>
<td>saphaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dark</td>
<td>adhyaaro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dirty</td>
<td>phohar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>green</td>
<td>light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>light</td>
<td>orange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orange</td>
<td>purple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purple</td>
<td>red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>white</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>white</td>
<td>yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>colorful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colorful</td>
<td>hariyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hariyo</td>
<td>ujyaalo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ujyaalo</td>
<td>suntalaa rang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suntalaa rang</td>
<td>pyaaji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pyaaji</td>
<td>raato</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raato</td>
<td>seto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seto</td>
<td>pahelo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pahelo</td>
<td>rangi changi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>naraamro</td>
<td>quickly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiet (children)</td>
<td>shaanta</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad/useless (things)- kharaab/kaam- rotten food</td>
<td>kuheko, saDekko</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nalaagne</td>
<td>sick</td>
<td>biraami</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cold (water)</td>
<td>chiso</td>
<td>silent (person)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dry (cloth, wood)</td>
<td>sukeko</td>
<td>slow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good/edible (food)</td>
<td>raamro</td>
<td>soft (call)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khaana hune</td>
<td>sour</td>
<td>masino (swor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good (things)</td>
<td>asal, kaamlaagne strong</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard (firm)</td>
<td>kaDaa, saarho</td>
<td>sweet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talkative (pers.)</td>
<td>dherai bolne.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hot (water)</td>
<td>taato</td>
<td>kuraauTe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hot tasting</td>
<td>piro</td>
<td>tight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bitter</td>
<td>tito</td>
<td>warm (water)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loose</td>
<td>khukulo</td>
<td>weak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loud (call)</td>
<td>Thulo</td>
<td>kamjor, nirbaliyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>new (thing)</td>
<td>nayaa</td>
<td>well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noisy (children)</td>
<td>chakchake</td>
<td>wet (cloth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>across</td>
<td>paari</td>
<td>out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out</td>
<td>baahira</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>along</td>
<td>saraasasar</td>
<td>over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>over</td>
<td>maathii</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>away from</td>
<td>TaadDhaa</td>
<td>south</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>south</td>
<td>dakchhin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>down</td>
<td>tala</td>
<td>towards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>towards</td>
<td>tira</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>east</td>
<td>purba</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>up</td>
<td>maathi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>into</td>
<td>hhitra, amaa</td>
<td>west</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>west</td>
<td>paschim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>north</td>
<td>uttar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

216

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
## Flowers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>asters</td>
<td>godaabari</td>
<td>orchids</td>
<td>sungaabhaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bunch</td>
<td>jhuppaa</td>
<td>rose</td>
<td>gulaab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dahlia</td>
<td>laahure phul</td>
<td>sunflower</td>
<td>suryamukhi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flower</td>
<td>phul</td>
<td>rhododendron</td>
<td>gurāās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jasmine</td>
<td>chameli</td>
<td>marygold</td>
<td>sayapatri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lily</td>
<td>kumud</td>
<td>poinsettia</td>
<td>laalupaate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lotus</td>
<td>kamal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Fruits

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>apple</td>
<td>syaau</td>
<td>mango</td>
<td>āāp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apple–pear</td>
<td>naaspaati</td>
<td>muskmelon</td>
<td>kharbujaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apricot</td>
<td>khurpaani</td>
<td>orange</td>
<td>junaar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banaana</td>
<td>keraa</td>
<td>papaya</td>
<td>mewaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cashews</td>
<td>kaaju</td>
<td>peach</td>
<td>aaru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coconut</td>
<td>nariwal</td>
<td>peanut</td>
<td>badaam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>custard apple</td>
<td>sariphaa</td>
<td>persimon</td>
<td>haluwaabed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date</td>
<td>chhohoraa</td>
<td>pineapple</td>
<td>bhulkaTahar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grape</td>
<td>angur</td>
<td>plum</td>
<td>aarubakhaDaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grapefruit</td>
<td>bhogate</td>
<td>pomegranate</td>
<td>aanaar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guava</td>
<td>ambaa, belauti</td>
<td>raisin</td>
<td>kismis, daakh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jackfruit</td>
<td>rukh kaTahar</td>
<td>tamarind</td>
<td>amili</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lemon/lime (large)</td>
<td>nibuwaa</td>
<td>tangerine</td>
<td>suntalaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lemon/lime (small)</td>
<td>kaagati</td>
<td>walnut</td>
<td>okhar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lichi</td>
<td>lichi</td>
<td>watermelon</td>
<td>tarbujaa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Household Vocabulary

- to boil (things) – usinnu
- to baste – maasuma/tarkaa
- to beat (eggs, etc) – pheTnu
- rimaajhol haalnu
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to boil (water)</td>
<td>umaalnu</td>
<td>cotton cloth</td>
<td>suti kapaDaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to buy</td>
<td>kinnu</td>
<td>courtyard</td>
<td>aagan, chok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to clean</td>
<td>saphaa garnu</td>
<td>cups &amp; saucers</td>
<td>pyaalaa ra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to cook</td>
<td>pakaunu</td>
<td></td>
<td>rikaabi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to cut up into pieces</td>
<td>Tukraa paarnu</td>
<td>curtain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to dust</td>
<td>saphaa garnu</td>
<td>door</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to fry (meat, vegetables)</td>
<td>taarnu</td>
<td>drainage</td>
<td>Dhal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to make the bed</td>
<td>ochhyaan milaunu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to marinate</td>
<td>molnu</td>
<td>fork</td>
<td>kääTaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to measure</td>
<td>naapnu</td>
<td>frying pan</td>
<td>taawaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to mix</td>
<td>misaaunu</td>
<td>garbage</td>
<td>phohor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to peel</td>
<td>taachhnu</td>
<td>garden</td>
<td>bagaīchha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to prepare</td>
<td>taiyaar garnu</td>
<td>hot</td>
<td>taato</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to put</td>
<td>raakhnu</td>
<td>house rent</td>
<td>bhaaDaa,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to scrub</td>
<td>maajhnu, ghoTnu</td>
<td></td>
<td>baahaal,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to shake</td>
<td>hallaaunu</td>
<td></td>
<td>kiraayaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to slice</td>
<td>Tukraa paarnu</td>
<td>kerosene</td>
<td>maTTiteli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to stew</td>
<td>suruwa pakaunu</td>
<td>kettle</td>
<td>kitli, chiyaadaani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to stir</td>
<td>pheTnu</td>
<td>knife</td>
<td>chakku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to sweep</td>
<td>saphaa garnu</td>
<td>knife</td>
<td>batti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>baDhaarnu</td>
<td>lamp</td>
<td>gharpati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to throw</td>
<td>phyāāknu</td>
<td>latch</td>
<td>chheskini,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to wash</td>
<td>dhunu, pakhaalnu</td>
<td></td>
<td>chukul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>almirah</td>
<td>aalmaari, daraaj lid</td>
<td></td>
<td>birko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ashtray</td>
<td>kharaani daani</td>
<td>living-room</td>
<td>baiThak kooThaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bathroom</td>
<td>sauchaalaya</td>
<td>luke warm</td>
<td>mantaato</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blanket</td>
<td>kambal</td>
<td>match</td>
<td>salaai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>building</td>
<td>bhawan</td>
<td>mirror</td>
<td>ainaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chair</td>
<td>mech, kursi</td>
<td>needle</td>
<td>siyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cold</td>
<td>chiso</td>
<td>pillow</td>
<td>takiyaa, siraani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corner</td>
<td>kunaa</td>
<td>plate</td>
<td>thaal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

218
plate (small) - rikaapi
pots & pans - bhaaDaa KāDaa tap
quilt - sirak
toilet
room - koThaa
wall
safety pin - huk, khip
utensils
scissor - kalchi
waste
sheet (bed) - tanna
wall
spoon - chamchaa
well
steps - khuDkilaa
wool (for knitting)
storey - talaa
woolen cloth

Insects

ant - kamilaa
grasshopper
butterfly - putali
louse
firefly - junkiri
mosquito
flea - upiyāā
scorpion
fly - jhingaa
spider

Kinship Terms

beloved - premikaa
brother’s son - bhatijaa
bride - dulahi
brother’s daughter - bhatiji
bride-groom - dulaahaa
caste - jaat
brother - bhai
close kin - saakhhai
(younger) brother - daai, daaju
daughter - chhoi
brother’s wife - buhaari
daughters’ husband - juwaa!
(younger) brother’s wife - bhaauju
family - pariwaar
father - baa, buwaa
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nepali Term</th>
<th>English Term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>father-in-law</td>
<td>husband's younger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father-in-law's</td>
<td>husband's younger sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>house</td>
<td>husband's younger sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father's elder-brother</td>
<td>husband's younger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father's elder-brother's</td>
<td>husband's younger sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brother's wife</td>
<td>husband's younger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father's younger brother</td>
<td>husband's younger sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brother's wife</td>
<td>husband's younger sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father's younger brother</td>
<td>husband's younger sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father's sister</td>
<td>mother's father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father's sister's husband</td>
<td>mother's father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grand-daughter</td>
<td>mother's father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grand-father</td>
<td>mother's mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grand-mother</td>
<td>sister (elder)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grand-son</td>
<td>sister (younger)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guest</td>
<td>sister's husband (elder)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>husband</td>
<td>sister's husband (younger)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>husband's elder-brother</td>
<td>sister's son</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>husband's elder-brother's</td>
<td>sister's daughter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brother's wife</td>
<td>step mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>husband's younger brother</td>
<td>son</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brother's wife</td>
<td>son's wife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>husband's younger brother</td>
<td>wife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brother's wife</td>
<td>wife's brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>husband's elder-sister</td>
<td>wife's sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>husband's elder-sister's</td>
<td>wife's sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brother's wife</td>
<td>wife's sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>husband's elder-sister's</td>
<td>wife's sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sister</td>
<td>nanda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brother's wife</td>
<td>naaatedaar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother</td>
<td>naataa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lover</td>
<td>premi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother</td>
<td>aamaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother-in-law</td>
<td>saasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother's brother</td>
<td>maamaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother's brother's wife</td>
<td>mother's sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother's sister</td>
<td>mother's sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother's sister's husband</td>
<td>mother's sister's husband</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother-in-law</td>
<td>saanobaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother's father</td>
<td>baaje</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother's mother</td>
<td>bajai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sister (elder)</td>
<td>didi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sister (younger)</td>
<td>bahini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sister's husband (elder)</td>
<td>bhinaaju</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sister's husband (younger)</td>
<td>juwaai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sister's son</td>
<td>bhaanjaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sister's daughter</td>
<td>bhaanji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>step mother</td>
<td>sauteni aamaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>son</td>
<td>chhoraa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>son's wife</td>
<td>buhaarri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wife</td>
<td>swaasni, srimati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wife's brother</td>
<td>saalaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wife's sister</td>
<td>saali</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
LOCATIONS

back - pachhaaDi  
bottom/lower - tallo  
front - agaaDi  
left - debre, baayaa  
here - yahaa  
middle/center - bichhnaa  
right - daahine, daayaa  
side - chhnu  
there - tyahaa  
top/upper - maathillo

MANIPULATIONS

bend (a stick) - bangyaaunu  
bind/tie up - baadhnu  
bore (a hole) - pwaal paarnu  
brake (rope) - chaDaaunu  
build (house) - banaaunu  
bury (something) - gaaDnu  
buy - kinnu  
comb (hair) - kornu  
count - gannu  
cover - Dhaaknu  
crush - nichornu  
cut (food into pieces) - Tukraa paarnu  
cut (rope) - kaaTnu  
destroy (house, fence) - bigaarnu  
dig (a hole) - khannu  
dig up (root, crop) - khannu  
discover/find - pattaa lagaaunu  
divide/share - bhang lagaaunu  
draw/sketch - chitra khichhnu  
empty out - khaali paarnu  
examine - jaachnu  
fight - nibhaaunu  
garnu - laDnu, jhagaDaa  
fill (a vessel) - bharnu  
fold (cloth) - paTyaaunu  
hit - haunnu, piTnu  
hold - samaatnu  
hunt - sikaar khelnu  
join - misfiinu, joDnu  
kick - laat haunnu  
killed - maarnu  
lamp - baalnu  
mark - haraaunu  
make - banaaunu  
mark - chino lagaaunu  

221
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>measure</td>
<td>naapnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mend/repair</td>
<td>bannaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mix</td>
<td>missaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paint</td>
<td>rangaaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peel</td>
<td>chhaDaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pick(fruit, beans)</td>
<td>Tipnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pierce</td>
<td>pwaalpaarnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pile up</td>
<td>thupaarnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plant (seed)</td>
<td>ropnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play (a game)</td>
<td>khelnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play(beat drum)</td>
<td>bajaaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>point at</td>
<td>dekhaaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pour</td>
<td>khanyaaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>press</td>
<td>thichnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pull</td>
<td>taannu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>push</td>
<td>dhakelnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put on (clothes)</td>
<td>lagaaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roast</td>
<td>bhuTnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rub</td>
<td>dalnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scratch(itchy spot)</td>
<td>kanyaaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>search for</td>
<td>khojnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>bechnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sew</td>
<td>siunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sharpen</td>
<td>tikhaaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoot</td>
<td>goli haannu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>dekhaaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smash (bottle)</td>
<td>phuTaaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spread out</td>
<td>phailaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>squeeze</td>
<td>nicharnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweep (floor)</td>
<td>baDhaarnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take off (clothes)</td>
<td>phukaalnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear</td>
<td>chyaatnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tie (knot)</td>
<td>baadhnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>touch/feel</td>
<td>chhunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try/attempt</td>
<td>kosis garnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncover</td>
<td>kholnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>untie</td>
<td>phukaalnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unwrap</td>
<td>kholnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wash</td>
<td>dhunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear (clothes)</td>
<td>lagaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weave (net, bag, mat)</td>
<td>lagaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weed (a garden)</td>
<td>lagaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wipe</td>
<td>lagaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrap up</td>
<td>lagaunu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MANUFACTURED ITEMS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>axe</td>
<td>bancharo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basket</td>
<td>Doko, Tokari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boat</td>
<td>Dungaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charcoal</td>
<td>koilaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cloth</td>
<td>kapaDaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comb</td>
<td>kaalyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost/price</td>
<td>mol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crack</td>
<td>pwaal, chira</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>door</td>
<td>Dhokaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drum</td>
<td>maadal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coal</td>
<td>gol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fence</td>
<td>baar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fire</td>
<td>aago</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fish net</td>
<td>jaal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flame</td>
<td>jwaalaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floor</td>
<td>bhul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Nepali</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flute</td>
<td>bāásuri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garden/farm</td>
<td>bagalchaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ground oven</td>
<td>chulho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hole</td>
<td>pwaal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hook (for fishing)</td>
<td>balchhi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>house</td>
<td>ghar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knife</td>
<td>chakku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knot (in rope)</td>
<td>gāaTho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>line/mark</td>
<td>chino</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mat</td>
<td>gundri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money</td>
<td>paisaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>necklace</td>
<td>haar, maalaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>needle</td>
<td>siyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nest</td>
<td>gāD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ornament</td>
<td>gahanaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oil</td>
<td>tel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plate</td>
<td>thaal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>point</td>
<td>bindu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pole/stake</td>
<td>khāābo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post</td>
<td>khaābo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>road/path/trail</td>
<td>baaTo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roof</td>
<td>chhaanaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rope</td>
<td>Dori</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salt</td>
<td>nun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shelter/bush hut</td>
<td>Dasnaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleeping mat</td>
<td>dhuwäa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smoke</td>
<td>dhwääso</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soot</td>
<td>thread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steps/stairs/ladder</td>
<td>bhäryaang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trap (for birds, animals)</td>
<td>khor, dharaap paaso</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wages/pay</td>
<td>jyaalaa, talab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wall</td>
<td>parkhaal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>white ash</td>
<td>khaaraani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>window</td>
<td>jhyaal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wound</td>
<td>ghaau</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Motions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>aaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dance</td>
<td>naachnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depart/go away</td>
<td>jaanu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>khasnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flee/run away</td>
<td>bhaagnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flow</td>
<td>bagnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>uDnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>jaanu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide (oneself)</td>
<td>luknu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jump (across/up)</td>
<td>uphranu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miss (a target)</td>
<td>nalaagnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>return/come back</td>
<td>phärkanu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>dagurnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>pauDi khelnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn</td>
<td>phärkanu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walk</td>
<td>hIDnu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Moving Actions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>lyaaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry on (arms, shoulder etc.)</td>
<td>boknu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>samaatnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close/shut</td>
<td>banda garnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drag</td>
<td>Taannu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drop(something)</td>
<td>khasaalnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fetch (go &amp; bring)</td>
<td>lyaaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide (something)</td>
<td>lukaannu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead</td>
<td>lagnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave behind</td>
<td>pachaaDi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>bheTnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>open</td>
<td>kholnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pick up</td>
<td>uThaaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put (down)</td>
<td>raakhnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arise/lift up</td>
<td>uThaaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remove</td>
<td>haTaaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>pThaaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shake</td>
<td>hallaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal</td>
<td>chornu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>linu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take (there)</td>
<td>lagnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw (away)</td>
<td>phyaaKnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn (something around, over)</td>
<td>palTaaunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twist (thread)</td>
<td>baTaaunu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Natural Objects

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bank (of river)</td>
<td>kinaaar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cloud</td>
<td>baadal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dust</td>
<td>dhulo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flood</td>
<td>baaDhi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fog</td>
<td>kuiro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ground</td>
<td>jamin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hill</td>
<td>DaaDaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lake</td>
<td>taal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moon</td>
<td>chandramaaa, jun stream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mountain</td>
<td>pahaaD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mud</td>
<td>hilo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ocean</td>
<td>mahaasaagar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plain</td>
<td>samma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rain</td>
<td>paani, barshaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>river</td>
<td>nadi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sea</td>
<td>samudra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shade</td>
<td>chhahaari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shadow</td>
<td>chhaayaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sky</td>
<td>aakaash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spring (of water)</td>
<td>mul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>star</td>
<td>taaraa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stone</td>
<td>Dhungaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>valley</td>
<td>kholaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sun</td>
<td>surya, ghaam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>water</td>
<td>besi, upatyakaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wind</td>
<td>paani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haawaa</td>
<td>haawaa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### OCCUPATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>barber</td>
<td>- naau</td>
<td>mason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blacksmith</td>
<td>- kaami</td>
<td>officer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broker</td>
<td>- dalaal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>businessman</td>
<td>- byaapaari</td>
<td>postman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butcher</td>
<td>- kasai, bagare</td>
<td>potter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carpenter</td>
<td>- sikarmi</td>
<td>servant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clerk</td>
<td>- kaarindaa</td>
<td>shopkeeper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cloth merchant</td>
<td>- kapadaa pasale</td>
<td>singer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cobbler</td>
<td>- saarki</td>
<td>soldier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contractor</td>
<td>- Thekedaar</td>
<td>spy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cook</td>
<td>- bhaanse</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>editor</td>
<td>- sampaadak</td>
<td>sweeper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gardener</td>
<td>- maali</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goldsmith</td>
<td>- sunaar</td>
<td>teacher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laborer</td>
<td>- jyaami</td>
<td>washerman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lawyer</td>
<td>- wakil</td>
<td>writer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magician</td>
<td>- jaadugar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Dakarmi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- aphisar,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- adhikaari</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- hulaaki</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- kumhaale</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- nokar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- pasale</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- gaayak</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- sipaahi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- jaasus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- vidyaarthi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- baDhaarne</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- maanchhe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- sikchhak</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- dhobi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- lekhak</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ORAL ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bark (dog)</td>
<td>- bhuknu</td>
<td>scream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belch</td>
<td>- Dakaarnu</td>
<td>shout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call out</td>
<td>- bolaaunu</td>
<td>sing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cough</td>
<td>- khoknu</td>
<td>smile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crow (rooster)</td>
<td>- baasnu</td>
<td>sneeze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cry/weep</td>
<td>- runu</td>
<td>speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hiccup</td>
<td>- hikka aaunu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hum</td>
<td>- gungunaaunu</td>
<td>spit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laugh</td>
<td>- haasnu</td>
<td>whisper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repeat</td>
<td>- dohoryaauunu</td>
<td>whistle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reply</td>
<td>- jawaaph dinu</td>
<td>yawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- chichchhayaaunu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- karaaunu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- git gaauunu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- muskuraaunu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- haachchhii garnu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- ghurnu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- bolnu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- thuknu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- saauti garnu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- suselnu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- haai garnu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Persons

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>baby</td>
<td>bachchaa</td>
<td>old woman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boy</td>
<td>KeTaa</td>
<td>woman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>girl</td>
<td>keTi</td>
<td>swaasni maa-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man</td>
<td>maanchhe</td>
<td>tanderi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old man</td>
<td>buDho</td>
<td>taruni</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Plants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plant Type</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bamboo</td>
<td>bāas</td>
<td>leaf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banaana</td>
<td>keraa</td>
<td>leaf vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bark (of tree)</td>
<td>bokraa</td>
<td>mushrooms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beans</td>
<td>simi, bhaTmaas</td>
<td>roots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>branch</td>
<td>hāāgaa</td>
<td>seed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bush/shrub</td>
<td>jhaaDi</td>
<td>stick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coconut</td>
<td>nariwal</td>
<td>sugar cane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corn</td>
<td>makai</td>
<td>sweet potato</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flower</td>
<td>phul</td>
<td>taro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forest/woods</td>
<td>ban</td>
<td>tobacco leaf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grass</td>
<td>ghāās</td>
<td>tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ground</td>
<td>jamin</td>
<td>trunk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Positions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Position</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>above</td>
<td>maathii</td>
<td>in/inside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>behind</td>
<td>pachhaaDi</td>
<td>near</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beside</td>
<td>chheumaa</td>
<td>on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between</td>
<td>bichmaa</td>
<td>outside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>far from</td>
<td>TaadDhaa</td>
<td>under/below</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in front of</td>
<td>agaaDi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### POSTURES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be seated</td>
<td>basi raakhnu</td>
<td>rise/get up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be standing</td>
<td>uThi raakhnu</td>
<td>sit down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bend over</td>
<td>jhuknu</td>
<td>stand up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie down</td>
<td>palTanu</td>
<td>wait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rest</td>
<td>aaraam garnu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Quantities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>all</td>
<td>sabai</td>
<td>many</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>empty</td>
<td>khaali</td>
<td>piece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>few</td>
<td>thorai</td>
<td>some</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>full</td>
<td>bhari</td>
<td>whole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>half</td>
<td>aadhaa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Shapes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shape</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crooked</td>
<td>baango</td>
<td>smooth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hollow</td>
<td>khokro</td>
<td>solid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rough (surf)</td>
<td>khasro</td>
<td>straight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>round</td>
<td>golo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Size

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>Thulo</td>
<td>small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long</td>
<td>laamo</td>
<td>tall/high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>narrow</td>
<td>sāāguro</td>
<td>thick (cloth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short</td>
<td>chhoTo</td>
<td>thin (cloth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short/low</td>
<td>hocho, chhoTo</td>
<td>wide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPICES – MASALAA, HERB, ETC.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>all spice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bay leaf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cardamon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chilli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cinnamon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cloves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coriander</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cumin seed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curry powder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fenugreek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garlic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ginger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nutmeg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parsley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pepper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saffron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seasame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tumeric</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SPONTANIOUS EVENTS**

<p>| blow (wind) | iaaawaa baharu dry out | sukaauni, suknu |
| burn(wood, fire) | balnu | fall (rain) | paani parchi |
| die | marnu | melt | paglanu |
| dissolve | galnu | swell | suninu |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>asparagus</td>
<td>kurilo</td>
<td>mustard</td>
<td>tori</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beans</td>
<td>simi</td>
<td>okra</td>
<td>raamtoriyaa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beets</td>
<td>chukandar</td>
<td>onion</td>
<td>pyaaj</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broccoli</td>
<td>barkaauli</td>
<td>peas</td>
<td>keraau</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cabbage</td>
<td>bandaa kobi</td>
<td>pepper, chilli</td>
<td>khursaani</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carrots</td>
<td>gaajar</td>
<td>bell pepper</td>
<td>bhDe khursaani</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cauliflower</td>
<td>kaauli</td>
<td>potato</td>
<td>aalu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chives</td>
<td>chhyaapi</td>
<td>pumpkin</td>
<td>pharsi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corn</td>
<td>makai</td>
<td>radish</td>
<td>mulaa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cucumber</td>
<td>kaaakro</td>
<td>snake gourd</td>
<td>chichinDo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eggplant</td>
<td>bhaanTaa</td>
<td>soyabeans</td>
<td>bhaTmaas</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kohlrabi</td>
<td>gyaaTh kobi</td>
<td>spinach</td>
<td>saag</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lentils</td>
<td>daal</td>
<td>squash</td>
<td>iskush</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>black lentils</td>
<td>kaalo daal</td>
<td>sweet potato</td>
<td>sakhar khanDa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red lentils</td>
<td>musurko daal</td>
<td>taro</td>
<td>plDaalu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yellow lentils</td>
<td>raharko daal</td>
<td>tomato</td>
<td>golbheDaa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lettuce</td>
<td>jiriko saag</td>
<td>turnip</td>
<td>salgam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lima bean</td>
<td>Thulo simi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Conjugation Tables

Verb ‘hunu’ to be at (present)

Example: ma nepaalmaa chhu – I am in Nepal.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>chhu</td>
<td>chhaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ta</td>
<td>chhas</td>
<td>chhainas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>chha</td>
<td>chhaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hami (haru)</td>
<td>chhau</td>
<td>chhainau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi (haru)</td>
<td>chhau</td>
<td>chhainau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>chhan</td>
<td>chhainan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaal (haru)</td>
<td>hunuhunchha</td>
<td>hunuhunna</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Verb ‘hunu’ to be (present)

Example: ma bidyarthi hā – I am a student.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>hā</td>
<td>hoina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ta</td>
<td>hos</td>
<td>hoinas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>ho</td>
<td>hoina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami (haru)</td>
<td>han</td>
<td>hoinaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi (haru)</td>
<td>hau</td>
<td>hoinau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>hun</td>
<td>hoinan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaal (haru)</td>
<td>hunuhunchha</td>
<td>hunuhunna</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

230
Verb ‘hunu’ to be (past)

Example: ma hijo pokharaamaa thiē – I was in Pokhara yesterday.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>thiē</td>
<td>thiina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>thiis</td>
<td>thiinas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>thiyo</td>
<td>thienas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami (haru)</td>
<td>thiyaū</td>
<td>thienau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi (haru)</td>
<td>thiyaū</td>
<td>thienau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>thie</td>
<td>thienan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaal (haru)</td>
<td>hunuhunthyo</td>
<td>hunuhunnathyo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Simple Present

Example: ma jaanchhu– I go.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>jaanchhu</td>
<td>jaanna, jāādina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>jaanchhas</td>
<td>jāādainas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>jaanchha</td>
<td>jāādaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami (haru)</td>
<td>jaanchhauā</td>
<td>jaannaū, jāādainau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi (haru)</td>
<td>jaanchhau</td>
<td>jaannaū, jāādinau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>jaanchhan</td>
<td>jāādainan, jaannan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaal (haru)</td>
<td>jaanuhunchha</td>
<td>januhunna</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Present Progressive

Example: ma jāādai chhu – I am going.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NETATIVE*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>jāādai chhu</td>
<td>jāādai chhaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>jāādai chhas</td>
<td>jāādai chhainas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>jāādai chha</td>
<td>jāādai chhaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami (haru)</td>
<td>jāādai chhaā</td>
<td>jāādai chhainau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi (haru)</td>
<td>jāādai chhau</td>
<td>jāādai chhainau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>jāādai chhan</td>
<td>jāādai chhainan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaaī (haru)</td>
<td>jāādai hunhunchha</td>
<td>jāādai hunuhunna</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Although you will sometimes hear this form, the alternative negative form of the progressive tense, is more common. (ma gairaheko chhaina – I am not going.

Present Perfect

Example: ma gaeko chhu – I have gone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>gaeko chhu</td>
<td>gaeko chhaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>gaeko chhas</td>
<td>gaeko chhainas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>gaeko chha</td>
<td>gaeko chhaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami (haru)</td>
<td>gaekaa chhaā</td>
<td>gaekaa chhainā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi (haru)</td>
<td>gaekaa chhau</td>
<td>gaekaa chhaainau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>gaekaa chhaan</td>
<td>gaekaa chhaianu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaaī (haru)</td>
<td>jaanu bhaeko chha</td>
<td>jaanu bhaeko chhaina</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Present Progressive (Alternative Form)

Example: ma gairaheko chhu – I am going.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>gairaheko chhu</td>
<td>gairaheko chhaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>gairaheko chhas</td>
<td>gairaheko chhainas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>gairaheko chha</td>
<td>gairaheko chhaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami (haru)</td>
<td>gairahekaa chhaā</td>
<td>gairahekaa chhainā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi</td>
<td>gairahekaa chhau</td>
<td>gairahekaa chhaianu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>gairahekaa chhan</td>
<td>gairahekaa chhainan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaaī (haru)</td>
<td>gairahanu bhaeko chha</td>
<td>gairahanu bhaeko chhaina</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Simple Past: Intransitive Verb

Example: ma gaë– I went.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>gaë</td>
<td>gaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>gais</td>
<td>gainas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>gayo</td>
<td>gaena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami (haru)</td>
<td>gayaū</td>
<td>gaenaū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi (haru)</td>
<td>gayau</td>
<td>gaenau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>gae</td>
<td>gaenan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaal (haru)</td>
<td>jaanubhayo</td>
<td>jaanubhaena</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Simple Past: Transitive Verb

Example: maile bhaat khaaë– I ate rice.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>maile</td>
<td>khaaë</td>
<td>khaaaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taile</td>
<td>khaais</td>
<td>khaainas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usle</td>
<td>khaayo</td>
<td>khaaena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami (haru) le</td>
<td>khaayaū</td>
<td>khaenaū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi (haru) le</td>
<td>khaayau</td>
<td>khaenau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharule</td>
<td>khaae</td>
<td>khaenan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaal (haru) le</td>
<td>khaanubhayo</td>
<td>khaanubhaena</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Past Progressive

Example: ma jāādai theīē – I was going.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>jāādai thīē</td>
<td>jāādai thiīnā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>jāādai thīīs</td>
<td>jāādai thiīnas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>jāādai thīyo</td>
<td>jāādai thī na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami (haru)</td>
<td>jāādai thīyaā</td>
<td>jāādai thīenaā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi (haru)</td>
<td>jāādai thīyau</td>
<td>jāādai thīenau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>jāādai thīe</td>
<td>jāādai thīenan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaaal (haru)</td>
<td>jāādai hunuhunhytho</td>
<td>jāādai hunuhunnathyo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Past Perfect

Example: ma gaeko thīē- I had gone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>gaeko thīē</td>
<td>gaeko thiīnā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>gaeko thīīs</td>
<td>gaeko thiīnas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>gaeko thīyo</td>
<td>gaeko thīena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami (haru)</td>
<td>gaekaa thīyaā</td>
<td>gaekaa thīenaā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi (haru)</td>
<td>gaekaa thīyau</td>
<td>gaekaa thīenau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>gaekaa thīe</td>
<td>gaekaa thīenan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaaal (haru)</td>
<td>jaanu bhaeko thīyo</td>
<td>jaanu bhaeko thīena</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Past Habitual

Example: I used to go—ma jaanthē.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>jaanthē</td>
<td>jaannathē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>jaanthis</td>
<td>jaannathis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>jaanthyo</td>
<td>jaannathyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami (haru)</td>
<td>jaanthyaū</td>
<td>jaannathyuaū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi (haru)</td>
<td>jaanthyau</td>
<td>jaannathyau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>jaanthe</td>
<td>jaannathe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaal (haru)</td>
<td>jaanuhunthyo</td>
<td>jaanuhunnathyo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Unknown Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>gaechhu</td>
<td>gainachhu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>gaichhas</td>
<td>gainachhas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>gacchha</td>
<td>gaenachha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami (haru)</td>
<td>gacchhaū</td>
<td>gaenachhau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi (haru)</td>
<td>gacchhau</td>
<td>gaenachhan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>gacchhan</td>
<td>jaanu bhaenchha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaal (haru)</td>
<td>jaanu bhaechha</td>
<td>jaanu bhaenchha</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Impertative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>jaaū</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>jaa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>jaawos</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami (haru)</td>
<td>jaawaū</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi (haru)</td>
<td>jaau</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>jaun</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaal (haru)</td>
<td>jaanus, jaanuhos, jaanos</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Future Indefinite

Example: ma jaančchhu– I’ll go.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>jaanechhu</td>
<td>jaanechhaina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>jaanechhas</td>
<td>jaanechhainas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>jaanechha</td>
<td>jaanechhainu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami (haru)</td>
<td>jaanechhaū</td>
<td>jaanechhainau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi (haru)</td>
<td>jaanechhau</td>
<td>jaanechhainau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>jaanechhan</td>
<td>jaanechhainan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaał (haru)</td>
<td>jaanu hunechha</td>
<td>jaanu hunechhaina</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future Condition

Example: ma jaaūlāa– I’ll go.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
<th>JAAULAA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>jaaūlāa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>jaalaas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>jaalaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haami(haru)</td>
<td>jaawaūlāa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timi (haru)</td>
<td>jaawaulaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniharu</td>
<td>jaalaan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapaał (haru)</td>
<td>jaanuholaa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Reading and Writing Section
Writing System

Nepali, like Hindi and Sanskrit, is written in the Devanagari script. It consists of (1) vowels (2) consonants and (3) half letters (conjuncts).

(1) Vowels

Nepali has two kinds of vowels.

a. Vowel characters: These are used
   (i) in the beginning of a word, Ex. aaja – today
   (ii) after other vowels aau – come

b. Vowel signs: These are used after consonants.
   Ex. maathi – above

(2) Consonants

Each Nepali consonant has an inherent vowel ‘a’ in it. So when a consonant is recited each is pronounced as though it were followed by the ‘a’ sound.

(3) Half letters (Conjuncts)

Most Nepali consonant characters have their half forms.

(4) The use of halant (.)

This mark halant is attached to the foot of a consonant to cancel the inherent vowel in the letter. Its use is generally confined to verbal forms. Examples–

| भाउनुस् | — aauanus |
| जाउनुस् | — jaanus |
| हवास् | — hawas |
| छन् | — chhan |
Below are given the Nepali vowels and consonants with arrows showing the most accepted way of drawing them. Alongside most letters is given an English word or words with one or two underlined letters whose pronunciation closely approximates the pronunciation of the Nepali letter.

**K** (क)
- **SCOT**
- **SKIN**

**K** (क)
- **ASPIRATED FORM OF K**

**G** (ग)
- **GIVE**
- **GO**

**G** (ग)
- **ASPIRATED FORM OF G**

**NG** (न)
- **SING**
CH

ASPIRATED FORM OF CH

J

JH

ASPIRATED FORM OF J

YOUNG

More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com
BETTER

TH

ASPIRATED FORM OF T

DAY

DH

ASPIRATED FORM OF D

N
a

aa

sit

pin

put

book

put

about

ago

father

sit

pin

bin

book

put
More Nepali courses on www.livelingua.com

E  RED  GET

A+I = AI

O  HOLY

A+U + AU  SEWED

OANG  SUNG
NEPALI ALPHABET

VOWEL CHARACTERS

ा ा ई ई उ उ ए ए ऑ ऑ ओ ओ छ

VOWEL SIGNS

- ठ ठ ठ ठ ठ ठ

व+ Signs.

ब बा बि बो बू बे बे बो बो

ba baa bi bi bu bu be bai bo bau
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONSONANTS</th>
<th>Unvoiced</th>
<th>Unvoiced</th>
<th>Voiced</th>
<th>Voiced</th>
<th>Nasal</th>
<th>Unaspirated</th>
<th>Aspirated</th>
<th>Unaspirated</th>
<th>Aspirated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Velar</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>क। क्ष। ख। ग। घ। ङ। ह।</td>
<td>k। kh। g। gh। n।</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Palatal</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ण। च। छ। ज। झ। ङ। ळ।</td>
<td>ch। chh। j। jh। n।</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Retroflex</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ट। ठ। ड। ढ। ण। त।</td>
<td>T। Th। D। Dh। n।</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dental</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>त। थ। द। ध। न।</td>
<td>t। th। d। dh। n।</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Labial</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>प। फ। ब। म। भ। म।</td>
<td>P। Ph। b। bh। m।</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Semivowels</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>य। र। ल। ब।</td>
<td>y। r। l। w।</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sibilants</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>श। ष। श। ष। स।</td>
<td>sh। sh। s।</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Glottal Fricative</strong></td>
<td>ह।</td>
<td>h।</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Step One

Consonant characters

क ल भ न श
k l m n s

Vowel characters

अ आ इ ई
a aa i i

Vowel Signs

़ ध न
aa i i

Words

कलम कमल ध्रसल कल

प्रामा नाम सामान फाम

मसला किन सोमाना मीना

मलाई हलम मानिस साइकल
Step Two

Consonant characters

ख त प र
kh t p r

Vowel characters

उ ऊ
u u

Vowel Signs

ॻ ू
u u

Words

खाउ खाम खालो नखाउ पसल
tर तिनो तिनो तेल तास
pानी पात पान पुस पिर
rाली राम रिस राई प्रामेरिका
नेपाल रीता लतम सात सात
घुत रुख मुला कुरा सुन

Note — Vowel Signs ू (u) ृ (u) are joined differently with the consonant character र (r)

र ृ — रूमाल
Step Three

Consonant characters

घ ज ट ड ब
gh j t d b

Vowel characters

ए ओ
e o

Vowel Signs

ै ॉ
e o

Words

घर जाउ माघ घाम
shaun jaat jana juna
टाउको पेट कोट बति
taukoko pet koot bati
बाइ देउ हुई दिविन
dai deu hui divina
बोलखा विन बाल पोखरा
bolkha vin bal pokhara
बस बा बाजे बाट
bas ba baaje bat
श्रोला एघार श्रोरालो बाटा

Sentences

म श्न्नेरिका जाने।
thabi ke kane? ma paine kane?
को बजार जाने? राम बजार जाने।
timile ke khaeko? mahu khaeko.
Step Four

Consonant characters

र ख ङ ध ध य

g ch D th y

Vowel characters

ए ऐ

ai

Vowel Signs

ai

Words

गाई गते गीत गुरू
चिया चिसो चामल चैत
डेरा डर चाड घडी
बाल कथा थकाई थोरै
यो ऐना यता गयो

Sentences

गाई बारोमा गयो।
मलाई यो किलाब देउ।
पानो तालो छु।
चोया मोठो छूँ।
मैले खाना खाएको छूँ।
Step Five

Consonant characters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chh</td>
<td>छु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Th</td>
<td>ठ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ph</td>
<td>फ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>ह</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Vowel Characters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ग्रो</td>
<td>au</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Vowel Sign

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vowel Sign</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>au</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>छन</td>
<td>छाता</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ठिक</td>
<td>काठ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>फेरे</td>
<td>फोहर</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>हामी</td>
<td>हिमाल</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>श्रीलो</td>
<td>श्रोत</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पद्याङ्ग</td>
<td>छोरो</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>कोठा</td>
<td>झाटो</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>सफ</td>
<td>फुल</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>हजर</td>
<td>होचो</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sentences

माइक्रो घर ब्रामेरिका हो। दुई माह्ना ब्रांग उ नेपाल ब्रायो। उ हिजो वसा-हो बोरा गयो। बोरा घेरे रना-इलो छ। बोराराम ताल र नदी छन्। म पनि भोजि बोरा जाने। तिमो कहिले जाने नी?
Step Six

Consonant characters

क छ झ ध भ व
jh Dh dh bh w

Half-letters (Conjuncts)

न + छ = नछ
t + छ = तछ
s + छ = रछ

Words

मोला भरना ठोलो ठाठा
धारो हुघ भाइ मोलि
कविवटा वजन वकोल बहाँ
खन्छ मन्छ गुल्छ बस्छों

Sentences

तिमो मोली कस्को घरमा जान्छो।
सुन्तला कस्तो छ? गुलियो छ।
उसको भ्रामा बन्दोदरमा बस्नु हुन्छ।
नेपाली भन्छ झिंझी घेरै मानिस बोल्छन्।
Step Seven

Consonant characters

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{ढ} & \text{ण} & \text{श} & \text{ष} \\
\text{ng} & \text{ya} & \text{na} & \text{sh} & \text{sh}
\end{array}
\]

Nasal modifiers

\[
\begin{array}{c}
(\breve{\text{a}}) & (\hat{i})
\end{array}
\]

Half - letters (Conjuncts)

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{ल} + \text{प} & = & \text{ल्प} \\
\text{क} + \text{छ} & = & \text{क्छ} \\
\text{ख} + \text{न} & = & \text{ख्न} \\
\text{ब} + \text{द} & = & \text{ब्द}
\end{array}
\]

Words

भाख  विसा  शरीर  शहर  
ढोढऽ  विस  पाल्पा  सब्जो  
शान्ति  शनिवार  सुबा  सावा  

Sentences

पाल्पाबाट  हिमालय  बेलिन्छ ।  
शान्ति  शनिवार  मन्दिरमा  जाँछ ।  
रक्तो  भन्दा  जङ्ग  मस्तो  हुन्छ ।  
किलाब  भोलाबाट  भिक्नुस्  र  पह्न  भालुस् ।  
तपाईंलाई  कतिपया  नेपाली  शब्द  ग्राउँछन् ।
Step Eight

Consonant characters

क श घ छ
ksh thr gyn

Half - letters (Conjuncts)

छ + छ = चच

घ + घ = घघ

म + म = मम

ज + घ = घघ

घ + घ = घघ

Words

कक्षा  कक्षी  मात्रे  ज्ञान

माय  सम-  ज्याला  हुप्ता

कक्षाय  जम्मा  बक्सा  नरभने

Sentences

सेरो  छोटो  चार  कक्षाया  है।

उसको  जात  कक्षी  हो।

उसको  उसमेर  सत्र  भाँचे  मयो।

बलाई  विज्ञान  संज्ञाले  लाग्यो।

पोखरावाह  पाल्पासम्म  हिंदेर  ज्ञान

एक  हुङ्गा  लाग्या।

भरियाले  एक  विनको  ज्याला  कान  लियो?

258
Step Nine

Half – letters (Conjuncts)

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{त} + \text{त} &= \text{त} \\
\text{न} + \text{न} &= \text{प्र} \\
\text{ट} + \text{ट} &= \text{टू} \\
\text{क} + \text{क} &= \text{कक} \\
\text{ड} + \text{ड} &= \text{डड} \\
\text{क} + \text{त} &= \text{क्त}
\end{align*}
\]

Words

सत्तरी उन्नाइस ठट्टा पकका
ग्राढ्डा मत्र छपन्न चौपट्ट

Sentences

यो किताब सबमन्दा पहिले उन्नाइस सय चौह्तरभा छापेको हो ।
यो कुरा पकका हो कि ठट्टा मात्र हो ?
श्रकिसलाई नेपालीमा ग्राढ्डा मनिन्छ ।
उसको नाम भत्तलाल हो ।
Step Ten

Half letters (Conjuncts)

\[ \text{घ} + \text{घ} = \text{घघ} \]
\[ \text{ण} + \text{ट} = \text{णट} \]
\[ \text{ऋ} + \text{ॐ} = \text{ऋय} \]
\[ \text{फ} + \text{न} = \text{फन} \]

Words

सुछघर  घण्टा  माण्डा  ख्याल
आपनो  पपाउरो  काठबंडू  प्यासुसु

Sentences

मेरो  कोटा  सफा  सुछघर  छः ।
यहाँबाट  स्वयम्भू  पुन  एक  घण्टा  लाग्छः ।
मेरो  ख्यालबाट  हिमाल  देखिन्छः ।
तिमि  आपनो  किताब  पढः ।
माण्डा  एक  किस्मको  तरकारी  हो ।
Step Eleven

Half letters (Conjuncts)

क + र = क्र
ट + ठ = ठ्ठ
र + छ = छर
म + र = म्र
र + ह = न्ह
व + र = व्र

Words

गर्छ, राष्ट्र, सोन्ह, कुन्दमा
बान्धु, इन्द्र, पन्छ, दृश्य
चिट्ठी, कौको, प्रधान, सान्है

Sentences

ग्राज मेरो केटो साथोको चिट्ठी ग्रायो।
उस्ताई कौको मन पद्दन।
नेपाल राष्ट्रो र रमाइलो देश हो।
एक जोर चप्पलको सोन्ह रुपियाँ पछ।
बन्धुपुरबाट घेरे राष्ट्रो दय देखिन्छ।
Step Twelve

Half-letters (Conjuncts)

\[ ज + ज = ज \]
\[ ध - ज = ज \]
\[ द + म = ध \]
\[ ब + य = ख \]
\[ स + ल = स्ल \]
\[ क्ष + र्य = क्ष्र्य \]
\[ ट + य = ठ्व \]

Words

पढ़ति पढ़ पढ़िनो
पढ़ सिल्लो तीक्षण
फटचाथ्रा द्वार द्वापर

Sentences

उस्को नाम पढ़ हो ।
मलाई गर्छ भन्ना पढ़ सन पढ़ेछ ।
कस्तो सिल्लो रहेछ ।
फटचाथ्रा उपिवेछ छ ।
ढोकालाई संस्कृतमा द्वार सन्धन्न ।
Step Thirteen

Half – letters (Conjuncts)

\[
\begin{align*}
क्ष + य & = क्ष्य \\
श + य & = ह्य \\
ष + ल & = ह्लए \\
ञ + ज & = हञ \\
ञ + ग & = हञ्ज \\
ञ + र + ई & = हो \\
ञ + ध + य & = ह्य्य
\end{align*}
\]

Words

इयान विध्य साङ्गा लक्ष पिहा विध्व चक्ना शोभान हुन्द्याम लक्षमणा भाङ्गो दक्ज

Sentences

इयान विध्य को साङ्गा हो।
मेरो लक्ष डाक्टर हुनु हो।
अमेरिकामा म गाईको मासु खाल्नु।
सार्वतको भोमान सान्यै राखो सितार बजाउँ-नौँ।
Step Fourteen

Half – letters (Conjuncts)

\[ \text{ट} + \text{न} = \text{टन} \]
\[ \text{ढ} + \text{छ} = \text{ढछ} \]
\[ \text{ढ} + \text{छ} = \text{ढछ} \]
\[ \text{छ} + \text{ทธ} = \text{छछ} \]

Words

काठ्छ तान्द्र तह्नछ ठाँठ्छ
बन्छछो ठाँढ़काउनुभयो हिन्छछ

Sentences

तिन्छो कोट मेरोसिट साद्द्रो त?
हाप्रो माई विद्वं विद्यालयमा पढ्यछ ।
यसपालो तीहारमा पटका पढ़काउनु भयो त?
हाति मन्त्रा बाघ छिटो हियछ ।
Step Fifteen

Half - letters (Conjuncts)

ह + र = ढ
ह + य = ह्य
ढ + य + य = ह्य्य
त + य + य = त्य्य
र + य + य = र्य्य
ढ + ग + य = ह्य्ग
च + च + य = चच्च्य
र + ह + ल + य + ह्च्च्च्य

Words

ढम, ह्याक्लो, पढ्य्यो, प्रोह्याभो
समाह्यो, गध्यो, क्यास्, घच्च्याउनु

Sentences

ढममा महितेल छ कि छौं?
मलाई नयंच्च्याउ न।
मदन तल प्रोह्याभो कि प्रोह्यापको छौं।
तिमी बेलायतमा के काम गध्यों?
उ प्रमेरिफ्कामा हुँदा निकै सिनेमा हेश्यो।
REFERENCES

1. Clark, T. W. — Introduction to Nepali
2. Dhungel, Tulsi Prasad — Nepali Rachana Shilpa
3. Hall, Eugene J. & Flamm, Carol S. — Orientation in American English
4. Pandey, Gopal — Rachana Keshar
5. Parajuli, Krishna Prasad — Prayogatmak Bhashatatwa
6. Parajuli, Krishna Prasad — Ramro Rachana Mitho Nepali
7. Pokhrel, Bal Krishna — Nepali Bhasha ra Sahitya
8. Pradhan, Pras Mani — Nepali Byakaran
7. Regmi, Chudamani Upadhyaya — Nepali Bhashako Utpatti
10. Risal, Bishnu Gopal & Shiva Gopal — Nepali Bhasha ra Byakaran
11. Sapkota, Mahananda — Dhwaniko Dhanda
12. Sharma, Bal Chandra — Nepali Shabdakosh
13. Sharma, Somnath — Madhya Chandrika
14. Shrivastava, Dayananda — Nepali Language : Its History & Development
15. Turner, R. L. — A Comparative & Etymological Dictionary of the Nepali Language